THE LIBRARY
BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY
PROVO, UTAH

F92
1808
v.12

SIR JOHN FROISSART'S CHRONICLES

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN,

AND THE

ADJOINING COUNTRIES,

FROM THE LATTER PART OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD II.
TO THE CORONATION OF HENRY IV.

NEWLY TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH EDITIONS,
WITH VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS FROM MANY CELEBRATED MSS.

By THOMAS JOHNES.

Who so shall telle a tale after a man,
He moste rehearse, as neighe as ever he can,
Everich worde, if it be in his charge,
All speke he never so rudely and so large;
Or elles he moste tellen his tale untrewe,
Or feinen thinges, or finden wordes newe.

CHAUCER'S PROLOGUE.

THE THIRD EDITION.

TO WHICH IS PREFIXED,
A LIFE OF THE AUTHOR, AN ESSAY ON HIS WORKS,
A CRITICISM ON HIS HISTORY,
AND A DISSERTATION ON HIS POETRY.

VOL. XII.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, PATERNOSTER-ROW;
AND J. WHITE, FLEET-STREET.

1808.

T. Davison, Printer,
Whitefriars.

THE LIBRARY
BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY
PROVO, UTAH

THE

CONTENTS

OF

THE TWELFTH VOLUME.

CHAP. I. The French Lords who had been Prisoners in Turkey return by Sea to Venice - - Page 1

II. The Lord Louis de Sancerre is made Constable of France, in the Room of the Count d'Eu, who had died in Turkey. —Boucicaut, during his Absence with the Count de Nevers, is appointed Marshal of France in the Place of the Lord Louis de Sancerre.—The French Lords who had been Prisoners in Turkey return to France - - 17

III. The Deaths of the Duke of Glocester and the Earl of Arundel.—The Manner in which the Dukes of Lancaster and York, and the Londoners, take the Matter - - - 23

IV. A great Assembly holden at Rheims, by the Emperor of Germany and King of France, on the Schism in the Church, and on the Means of uniting the two Parties - - - 35

CHAP. V. The Earl Marshal challenges the Earl of Derby, Son to the Duke of Lancaster, in the Presence of the King and his Council - - 40

VI. King Richard of England banishes the Earl of Derby from England for Ten Years, and the Earl Marshal for his Life - - - - 55

VII. The Earl of Derby, in consequence of his Banishment, leaves England for France. —The Earl Marshal, in obedience to his Sentence, goes to Flanders, and thence into Lombardy - - 58

VIII. The Count d'Ostrevant sends Ambassadors to the Earl of Derby.—The Earl arrives at Paris - - - - 62

IX. The Emperor and the King of France pursue the Plans they had settled at Rheims, for an Union of the Church. —The Bishop of Cambray is sent by them to the Pope at Rome.—The Answer that is made him - - 65

X. The King of France, in conformity to the Advice of his Nobles and the University of Paris, sends the Bishop of Cambray to Pope Benedict at Avignon, on the subject of an Union with the Church, and also his Marshal Boucicaut thither, to constrain the Pope to Obedience by Force of Arms, should there be Occasion - - 69

XI. In consequence of the Answer of Pope Benedict, the Marshal Boucicaut obliges him by force of Arms to submit himself to the Will of the King of France respecting an Union of the Church - - - 75

CHAP.

CHAP. XII. The Marshal Boucicaut returns to Hungary against the Turks.—The Earl of Derby sends to request Permission of the Duke of Lancaster to accompany Boucicaut in this Expedition.—The King of England is solicited by the King of France to engage his Subjects to a Neutrality between the two Popes, until a new Election shall take place; but they refuse compliance with their Monarch's Request - - 82

XIII. The Answer the Duke of Lancaster gives the Knight who had been sent to him by the Earl of Derby, to request his Permission to join the Expedition against the Turks.—The Death of the Duke of Lancaster - - 87

XIV. The King of England makes the King of France acquainted with the Death of the Duke of Lancaster, but does not notice it to the Earl of Derby, though Son to the late Duke - - - 90

XV. The Treaty of Marriage between the Earl of Derby and the Daughter of the Duke of Berry is broken off by the King of England, through the Means of the Earl of Salisbury 96

XVI. King Richard of England proclaims a Tournament, which is attended by very few Persons.—On setting out for Ireland, he banishes the Earl of Northumberland and his Son the Kingdom - - - 104

CHAP. V. The Earl Marshal challenges the Earl of Derby, Son to the Duke of Lancaster, in the Presence of the King and his Council - - 49

VI. King Richard of England banishes the Earl of Derby from England for Ten Years, and the Earl Marshal for his Life - - - - 55

VII. The Earl of Derby, in consequence of his Banishment, leaves England for France. —The Earl Marshal, in obedience to his Sentence, goes to Flanders, and thence into Lombardy - - 58

VIII. The Count d'Ostrevant sends Ambassadors to the Earl of Derby.—The Earl arrives at Paris - - - - 62

IX. The Emperor and the King of France pursue the Plans they had settled at Rheims, for an Union of the Church. —The Bishop of Cambray is sent by them to the Pope at Rome.—The Answer that is made him - - 65

X. The King of France, in conformity to the Advice of his Nobles and the University of Paris, sends the Bishop of Cambray to Pope Benedict at Avignon, on the subject of an Union with the Church, and also his Marshal Boucicaut thither, to constrain the Pope to Obedience by Force of Arms, should there be Occasion - - 69

XI. In consequence of the Answer of Pope Benedict, the Marshal Boucicaut obliges him by force of Arms to submit himself to the Will of the King of France respecting an Union of the Church - - - 75

CHAP.

CHAP. XII. The Marshal Boucicaut returns to Hungary against the Turks.—The Earl of Derby sends to request Permission of the Duke of Lancaster to accompany Boucicaut in this Expedition.—The King of England is solicited by the King of France to engage his Subjects to a Neutrality between the two Popes, until a new Election shall take place; but they refuse compliance with their Monarch's Request - - 82

XIII. The Answer the Duke of Lancaster gives the Knight who had been sent to him by the Earl of Derby, to request his Permission to join the Expedition against the Turks.—The Death of the Duke of Lancaster - - 87

XIV. The King of England makes the King of France acquainted with the Death of the Duke of Lancaster, but does not notice it to the Earl of Derby, though Son to the late Duke - - - 90

XV. The Treaty of Marriage between the Earl of Derby and the Daughter of the Duke of Berry is broken off by the King of England, through the Means of the Earl of Salisbury 96

XVI. King Richard of England proclaims a Tournament, which is attended by very few Persons.—On setting out for Ireland, he banishes the Earl of Northumberland and his Son the Kingdom - - - 104

CHAP. XVII. The English, and particularly the Londoners, rise in favour of the Earl of Derby against King Richard - - - 109

XVIII. The Archbishop of Canterbury is sent to France by the Londoners, and others of their Party in England, to bring back the Earl of Derby - - - 114

XIX. The Earl of Derby takes leave of the King and Lords of France, to visit his Cousin the Duke of Brittany - - - 120

XX. The Earl of Derby sails from Brittany to England.—His Reception by the Citizens of London - 125

XXI. The Earl of Derby, now Duke of Lancaster, undertakes the Government of England, and, by the aid of the Londoners, determines to seize the Throne.—He marches in Arms against King Richard at Bristol - - - 129

XXII. King Richard is informed that the Earl of Derby is marching against him with a powerful Army.—He retires to Flint Castle - - 132

XXIII. King Richard surrenders himself to the Earl of Derby, to be conducted to London - - 135

XXIV. The Lady of Coucy is taken away from the young Queen of England, and a new Household appointed for her.—King Richard is confined in the Tower of London 143

CHAP. XXV. The Earl of Rutland, Constable of England, hearing the King has surrendered, dismisses his Men at Arms. — Four Knights of the King's Chamber, having been put to Death by the Londoners, he is advised by those who were imprisoned with him to resign his Crown to the Duke of Lancaster 146

XXVI. King Richard of England resigns his Crown and Kingdom into the Hands of the Duke of Lancaster - - - 153

XXVII. A Parliament meets at Westminster, when the Duke of Lancaster is publicly acknowledged King of England.—The great Magnificence of his Coronation - - 159

XXVIII. Intelligence of the Imprisonment of King Richard is carried to France by the Lady of Coucy.—King Charles is much displeased thereat.—The Duke of Bourbon attempts in vain to reduce Bourdeaux, and other Towns in Aquitaine, to the Crown of France - 167

XXIX. The Council of France, by Permission of King Henry, send over Persons to visit Isabella, Queen to Richard II. - - - 174

XXX. The Earls of Huntingdon and Salisbury, and some others, having failed to murder treacherously King Henry of Lancaster, rise in Arms against him.—They are defeated and beheaded, and their Heads sent to the King - 178

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI. On the Death of John of Montfort, Duke of Brittany, the Bretons undertake the Wardship of the young Duke, and to be friendly to France.—The French King, distrusting the Sentiments of the new Reign in England, makes Provision against any sudden Change 187

XXXII. The Death of King Richard.—The Truces are renewed and kept between France and England.—The Earl Marshal, who had been banished England, dies at Venice - - - - 190

XXXIII. France preserves a Neutrality between the Popes of Rome and Avignon.—The Election of the Emperor Robert - - 196

THE

CHRONICLES

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN, &c.

CHAP. I.

THE FRENCH LORDS WHO HAD BEEN PRISONERS IN TURKEY RETURN BY SEA TO VENICE.

WHEN the count de Nevers and the lords of France who were made priſoners at the battle of Nicopoli (excepting the count d'Eu and the lord de Coucy, who had died) had been ſome time entertained by the ſultan, and had ſeen great part of his ſtate, he conſented they ſhould depart, which was told them by thoſe who had been ordered to attend to their perſonal wants. The count and his companions waited on the ſultan in conſequence, to thank him for his kindneſs and courteſy. On taking his leave, the ſultan addreſſed him, by means of an interpreter, as follows:

'John, I am well informed that in thy country thou art a great lord, and ſon to a powerful prince. Thou art young, and haſt many years to look for

ward; and, as thou mayeſt be blamed for the ill ſucceſs of thy firſt attempt in arms, thou mayeſt perchance, to ſhake off this imputation and regain thine honour, collect a powerful army to lead againſt me, and offer battle. If I feared thee, I would make thee ſwear, and likewiſe thy companions, on thy faith and honour, that neither thou nor they would ever bear arms againſt me. But no: I will not demand ſuch an oath: on the contrary, I ſhall be glad that when thou art returned to thy country, it pleaſe thee to aſſemble an army, and lead it hither. Thou wilt alway find me prepared, and ready to meet thee in the field of battle. What I now ſay, do thou repeat to any perſon whom it may pleaſe thee to repeat it; for I am ever ready for, and deſirous of, deeds of arms, as well as to extend my conqueſts.'

Theſe high words the count de Nevers and his companions underſtood well, and never forgot them ſo long as they lived. After this, when all things for their departure were ready, they were conducted by Ali baſhaw and Soli baſhaw, with a large eſcort, to the lords de Mathelin and d'Amine, and the others who had intereſted themſelves for their liberty. Before they embarked on board the galleys deſtined to carry them, they paid every expenſe they had incurred at Burſa, or at other places, with ſo much punctuality, that they were greatly praiſed.

As they weighed anchor, their conductors returned to the ſultan; and the galleys, having a favourable wind, ſoon arrived at the harbour, where

the

the count and his friends were received with joy. The lady of the lord de Mathelin was of a certain age, but perfectly well bred, and as fully accompliſhed as any lady in Greece, for in her youth ſhe had been brought up at the court of Conſtantinople with the lady Mary of Bourbon. She had from her learnt many things, for the lords and ladies of France are better educated than thoſe in any other country. This lady thought herſelf highly honoured when ſhe ſaw the count de Nevers, ſir Henry de Bar, Guy de la Trimouille, and the other lords under her roof, and welcomed them with every ſign of pleaſure. She firſt clothed them with fine new linen and cloth of Damaſcus made into gowns and veſtments, according to the taſte in Greece. After ſhe had dreſſed the maſters, ſhe did the ſame to their ſervants in the handſomeſt manner, each according to his rank. The lords were very thankful for her kindneſs, and publicly declared their gratitude for her generous conduct, as well as that of the lords de Mathelin and d'Amine, who honoured them by every mark of reſpect, and adminiſtered to their neceſſities.

News was ſoon carried to the iſland of Rhodes, that the ſultan had accepted a ranſom for the French lords, and that they were now at Mathelin. The intelligence gave much pleaſure to the grand maſter and to all his knights, who propoſed to equip and arm two galleys, and ſend them to Mathelin to convey the count and his fellow-priſoners to Rhodes. This was executed; and, when

ready, ſir James de Braſemont*, a Burgundian, who was marſhal of Rhodes, embarked on board, and had a favourable voyage to Mathelin, where he was made heartily welcome by the lord de Mathelin, his lady, and their gueſts. He remained there four days: on the fifth, the galleys having on board the purveyances of the French lords, the count and his companions took leave of the lord and lady de Mathelin, returning them their beſt thanks for all the kindneſs and friendſhip they had received, eſpecially the count de Nevers, who, as the principal perſonage, ſaid he was bound at all times hereafter to render them every ſervice in his power.

After many compliments on both ſides, the French lords entered the galleys, and, as long as they were in ſight, the lord de Mathelin remained on the ſhore, and after that went home. The galleys, having a favourable wind, arrived at Rhodes, and anchored in the haven, where veſſels from Cyprus, Baruth, and other ports in the Levant, uſually do. On their landing, they were received by many of the knights of Rhodes, who wear a white croſs, in memory of the croſs of our Lord Jesus Christ, who ſuffered to deliver others from the pains of hell. They are valiant knights, and give daily aſſaults by ſea or land on the infidels, to ſupport and defend the Chriſtian faith.

* Sir James de Braſemont. The MSS. have de Bauffremont, which I ſhould preſer.

The

The count de Nevers and the lords of France were received by the grand prior of Rhodes and the grand prior of Aquitaine, in their robes of ceremony, who offered to lend them any ſum of money, as far as their abilities extended, to enable them to diſcharge their daily expenſes, which the count and his friends thought a moſt courteous offer, and thanked them accordingly. In truth, they were in want of money, and the grand prior of Aquitaine, a right valiant knight, as his actions ſhewed in the Holy Land, lent the count de Nevers thirty thouſand francs, which were counted out by ſir Regnier Pot, houſe-ſteward to the count, and the lord de Rochefort in Burgundy. I believe this ſum was as much for his companions as for the count himſelf, and was divided among them, although the count de Nevers took on himſelf the whole debt.

The French lords remained ſome time in the iſland of Rhodes, to recover and properly array themſelves, for the climate was by far more temperate than in the countries where they had lately reſided: during the time they tarried at Rhodes, waiting for the galleys from Venice, ſir Guy de la Trimouille was ſeized with ſo dangerous an illneſs, that he there departed this life. He ordered his body to be buried on the ſpot where he died, and was, conſequently, interred in the church of Saint John, in the iſland of Rhodes. His funeral was honourably attended by the French lords, who much regretted his loſs, more eſpecially the count de Nevers, who knew that his father, the duke of

Burgundy, would be greatly affected by it, as he had always found him a wiſe and honeſt counſellor.

The galleys from Venice at length arrived, properly armed and equipped, to the great joy of the French lords. They were not long in making their preparations to depart, and took leave of the knights of Rhodes, who recommended their order to them, and to all devout ſouls who would be willing to aſſiſt it.

The count de Nevers, the lords Henry de Bar, de Boucicaut, ſir William de la Trimouille, the lord de Rochefort, ſir Regnier Pot, and the reſt, embarked on board the Venetian galleys, the captains of which reſolved to touch at the different iſlands, that their paſſengers might ſail more at their eaſe, and refreſh themſelves on ſhore, and ſhew the count de Nevers the various iſlands which lay between Rhodes and Venice. They ſteered firſt for Modon*, which is five hundred miles from Rhodes, and tarried there ſome days, to amuſe themſelves, for the port and country belong to the Venetians. From Modon, they had a fine paſſage to Colefo†, as the ſea was calm, where they refreſhed themſelves; and from Colefo they made for the iſland of Garre‡, where they did the ſame; thence they ſailed for the iſland of Chifolignie§; and, having anchored, they landed, and

* Modon, a town and port in the Morea.

† Colefo. I ſh [illegible]have imagined this to be Corfou, if Cephalonia were not ſeemingly intended afterwards.

‡ Garre. Q. Zante.

§ Chifolignie. Q. Cephalonia.

were met by a large party of ladies and damſels, who have the government of the iſland. They received the French lords with joy, and led them to the interior part of the iſland, which is very beautiful, to amuſe and enjoy themſelves. Some ſay, who pretend to be acquainted with the ſtate of this iſland, and inſiſt upon it, that fairies and nymphs inhabit it, and that frequently merchants from Venice or Genoa, who have been forced by ſtreſs of weather to make ſome ſtay there, have ſeen the appearances of them, and have had the truth of theſe reports confirmed.

The count de Nevers and his friends were very happy with the dames of Cephalonia, for they entertained them gaily, telling them their arrival had been matter of joy to them, from their being knights of honour and renown, for in general they had no other viſitors but merchants.

I may be aſked, if this iſland be ſolely inhabited by women. I anſwer no; but women have the ſovereignty of it: they, however, employ themſelves in needle and other works; and make ſuch fine cloths of ſilk, that none others can be compared to them. The men of the iſland, being ignorant, are employed to carry abroad theſe works, wherever they ſhall think to have the greateſt profit, but the women remain at home.

The men honour the fair ſex for their works, and becauſe they have always a ſufficiency of wealth. The ſtate of the iſland is ſuch, that no one dare approach it, to commit any injury, for whoever ſhould attempt it would periſh, as has

been frequently ſeen. For this cauſe, theſe ladies live in peace, without fear of any one: they are amiable, good-tempered, and without pride, and certainly, when they pleaſe, converſe with fairies, and keep them company.

After the count de Nevers and his companions had amuſed themſelves at this iſland for five days, they took leave of the ladies: the count made them ſuch handſome preſents, for their courteous treatment of them, that they were contented, and thanked him gratefully on his departure. When the lords were embarked, they put to ſea, and favourable winds carried them to a territory called Raguſa, when they refreſhed themſelves again, and thence made for Clarence *, which is one hundred miles diſtant from Venice. While the galleys were at anchor, and the lords in the town of Clarence, which belongs to the Venetians, they were known by a ſquire of honour and renown, from Hainault, called Bridoul de la Porte. He was a native of Mons, and had made, at his own expenſe, a pilgrimage, through devotion, to the Holy Sepulchre at Jeruſalem, and had viſited Cairo and St. Catherine's Mount.

The French lords had come to Clarence two days before him, and gave him a welcome reception, on hearing he was ſo good a man, and a native of Hainault, the country of the counteſs of Nevers, who was daughter to the earl of Hainault, and becauſe they were all in countries diſtant from

* Clarence, or Chiarenza, is in the Morea, oppoſite to Cephalonia.

their

their own. They aſked him what parts he was laſt come from, and alſo concerning the affairs of king James of Cyprus, and reſpecting Turkey. He made no difficulty, but inſtantly gave prudent and intelligent anſwers. The barons of France, having repoſed themſelves, re-embarked, and made ſail for Pareuſe *. All large veſſels and galleys which cannot, from want of water, land their cargoes at Venice, put into this port, for here the ſea becomes ſhallow. The French knights made no long ſtay before they embarked in ſmaller veſſels and arrived at Venice, where they were received with great joy. On their landing, they all returned thanks to God for their happy deliverance from the hands of the infidels, of which at one time they had deſpaired.

The count de Nevers and his companions went to the hotels which had been prepared for them; for, as their coming was known and expected for ſome time, their friends had ſent ſervants and equipages to wait their arrival. The count found part of his attendants, whom the duke and ducheſs of Burgundy had ſent thither, ready to receive him. Sir Dinde de Deſponde had alſo been at Venice ſome time waiting for them with the amount of their ranſom, for without his aſſiſtance, nothing could be done.

The French lords, on their arrival at Venice, inſtantly employed clerks and meſſengers to write and carry letters to France and elſewhere, to in-

* Pareuſe. Q. Parenzo, a town on the coaſt of Iſtria, nearly oppoſite to Venice.

form

form their friends of their happy deliverance. This was very ſoon publicly known, to the joy of all who heard it.

The duke and ducheſs of Burgundy loſt no time in preparing every thing ſuitable to the rank of their ſon the count de Nevers, ſuch as gold and ſilver plate, linen, tapeſtry, clothes of all ſorts, which were packed up on ſumpter horſes, and ſent to Venice under the care of the lord de Hangiers * and ſir James de Helly. In like manner did all the friends and relatives of the other lords ſend them every neceſſary ſuitable to their ranks. You may ſuppoſe all this was done at a great expenſe, for nothing was ſpared: their reſidence at Venice coſt much, as it is one of the deareſt towns in the world for ſtrangers. It was proper theſe lords ſhould keep up a ſtate becoming their rank, which fell naturally moſt heavy on the count de Nevers, their commander in chief.

The duke and ducheſs of Burgundy were very active in procuring his ranſom, that their ſon and heir might leave Venice with honour, and return to France and Flanders, where his preſence was much wiſhed for. The duke ſaid, that were it not for the aid of his good ſubjects in Burgundy, Artois and Flanders, the money would never have been raiſed, for their own and their ſon's other expences were very great.

* The lord de Hangiers. D. Sauvage ſuppoſes it ought to have been de Hangeſt, for a family of that name exiſted in his time in Picardy.

The

The different negotiations and embaſſies had called for large ſums, and, though the ranſom was but two hundred thouſand florins to Bajazet, yet the other coſts and expenſes amounted to as much more, as was declared by thoſe through whoſe hands the money paſſed; and without this ſum their liberty would never have been obtained.

It was matter of much conſideration how this money was to be raiſed; for neither the duke nor ducheſs were inclined to abate any thing of their ſtate, which was very magnificent. It was reſolved by his council to lay a tax on all the towns under his obedience, more eſpecially thoſe of Flanders; for they abounded in wealth, from their commerce, and therefore the greater load was laid on them, that the count de Nevers might be at liberty to quit Venice.

When the matter was mentioned to the townſmen of Ghent, they readily declared their willingneſs to preſent their young lord fifty thouſand florins to aid him in his ranſom. Bruges, Mechlin, Antwerp, Ypres, Courtray, and the other towns in Flanders, expreſſed their readineſs to aſſiſt in the ranſom of the count de Nevers.

The duke and ducheſs of Burgundy were well pleaſed at theſe anſwers, and returned their warm acknowledgements to the magiſtrates of the different towns in Flanders, and to thoſe of Artois and Burgundy, who had teſtified equally good inclinations.

The king of France was alſo very deſirous of aiding

aiding the French lords in their ranſom, although he had already been at a heavy expenſe in ſending his ambaſſadors to Hungary and Turkey. Theſe charges, however, he did not regret, ſince his couſins were now ſafe at Venice, and with them his own knight the lord de Boucicaut.

The count de Nevers and his companions were ſtill at Venice, for it was not his intention to depart thence until the diſcharge of the ranſom ſhould be completed. The merchant of Scio and the two Grecian lords had pledged themſelves to the ſultan for the payment, and ſuch an immenſe ſum was not readily raiſed.

Sir Dinde de Deſponde took great pains to accompliſh the buſineſs from his regard to the king of France and the duke of Burgundy, who had ſent him to Venice for the purpoſe, and he was more ſubtle and converſant in ſuch buſineſs than any other perſon whatever.

While others were diligently diſpatching the buſineſs of their ranſom, the lords ſpent their time moſt joyouſly at Venice; but, about this period, an infectious diſorder afflicted that town and neighbourhood, which began in the month of Auguſt, and never ceaſed until Saint Andrew's day. Great numbers fell victims to it, and among the reſt (the more the pity!) the lord Henry de Bar, eldeſt ſon to the duke of Bar, and, in right of his wife, heir to all the eſtates of the late lord de Coucy, excepting the dower of his widow. Thus were the two ladies de Coucy made

widows

widows in one year, which was a great misfortune.

The body of the lord Henry was embalmed and brought to France, and I believe buried at Paris, for his obſequies were there performed with much ſolemnity. On account of this epidemical diſtemper, and to avoid its danger, the count de Nevers left Venice, and fixed his reſidence at Treviſo, where he and the other French lords remained, with their houſeholds, for upwards of four months without ſtirring from it. During their ſtay at Treviſo, the king of Hungary was informed by the knights of Rhodes, of their having made peace with Bajazet, and obtained their liberty by payment of two hundred thouſand francs. He, in conſequence, ſent letters by a biſhop and ſome of his knights to the count de Nevers, to mark his affection to him, with others to thoſe who had the government of Venice. The biſhop and knights were ordered by the king to addreſs the count as follows, and of which they handſomely acquitted themſelves.

'My lord, we are ſent hither by our much-redoubted lord, and your couſin, the king of Hungary, who ſalutes you by us. Here are letters written by him to congratulate you on your deliverance from the ſultan Bajazet, his enemy. He is ſincerely rejoiced at your and your companions' eſcape, for, without the means you have purſued, it would never have been effected. Dear ſir, our lord is well aſſured that your treaties with the ſultan muſt have coſt you immenſe ſums of money,

and,

and, with the loſſes you all ſuffered at the diſaſtrous battle of Nicopoli, will have made it difficult to you to procure a ſufficiency for your ranſoms. Our ſovereign, therefore, dear ſir, orders us to make you his excuſes for not offering you, on this occaſion, his aſſiſtance: if it were in his power, he would moſt cheerfully do it, for he conceives and declares he is bound to aid you, from his connection with you by blood and other cauſes; were it not that he and his ſubjects have had ſuch loſſes by the late defeat, that you, who are a perſon of great underſtanding, will readily believe, and know the impoſſibility of his giving any aid at this preſent moment. The revenues of Hungary are ruined for this and the enſuing year, but whenever they are recovered, and the uſual payments made, that he may be enabled to ſhew his offers are not mere empty words, he will aſſuredly come handſomely forward to your ſervice.

'That you may believe our moſt redoubted ſovereign and your couſin is in earneſt, we muſt acquaint you that he has ordered us to offer for ſale to the rulers of Venice, the rents he receives from this town, which amount to ſeven thouſand ducats yearly; and that whatever theſe may produce you are to diſpoſe of as if it were your own; and for which we will ſign receipts to the Venetians, having full authority ſo to do.'

The ſpeech of the ambaſſadors from the king of Hungary was very agreeable to the French lords. They anſwered by the lord de Rochefort, who,

who, in the name of all, ſaid, 'that they were very ſenſible of this mark of kindneſs from the king of Hungary, who, to oblige his couſin the count de Nevers, offered to ſell his inheritance to aid them; that this was not an offer to be refuſed, nor the friendſhip and courteſy forgotten; that the count deſired to have a little time to conſider of his anſwer to the king.'

This was agreed to; and, within a few days, the ambaſſadors were told by the count de Nevers, that it would be very unbecoming him to pledge or ſell the inheritance of another; but that, if it were agreeable to them who had ſuch powers, to prevail on the Venetians to advance, on the ſecurity of theſe rents, a ſufficient ſum for the count de Nevers' daily expenſes, and to enable him to acquit himſelf of the thirty thouſand florins the grand prior of Aquitaine had lent him with ſo much generoſity in the iſland of Rhodes, he ſhould conſider it as a great favour, and moſt kindly thank the king of Hungary and his council for ſo doing.'

The ambaſſadors cheerfully promiſed to make the propoſal to the Venetians. When the Venetians heard it, they coldly replied they would deliberately conſider of the matter, and demanded fifteen days to weigh their determination. When theſe were expired, they anſwered (as I was told by one who heard it), 'that if the king of Hungary were diſpoſed to ſell his whole kingdom, the Venetians would willingly make the purchaſe, and pay the money down; but as for ſuch a trifle as

ſeven

ſeven thouſand ducats of yearly revenue which he poſſeſſed in the city of Venice, it was of ſo little value that they could not ſet a price on it either to buy or ſell, and they would not trouble themſelves about ſo ſmall an object.'

Such was the anſwer made by the Venetians to the ambaſſadors of the king of Hungary. Some ſaid, this reply was mere diſſimulation, and that, though the Hungarians had made the offer to the count, they, in an underhand way, cauſed this anſwer to be given. Things, therefore, remained in the ſtate they were in before, and the ambaſſadors took leave of the count de Nevers and thoſe of his countrymen then with him, who were, ſir Reginald Pot, the lord de Rochefort and ſir William de la Trimouille. They left Venice, and returned to Hungary; but the French lords continued at Treviſo on account of the great mortality that reigned in Venice.

CHAP. II.

THE LORD LOUIS DE SANCERRE IS MADE CONSTABLE OF FRANCE IN THE ROOM OF THE COUNT D'EU, WHO HAD DIED IN TURKEY.—BOUCICAUT, DURING HIS ABSENCE WITH THE COUNT DE NEVERS, IS APPOINTED MARSHAL OF FRANCE IN THE PLACE OF THE LORD LOUIS DE SANCERRE.—THE FRENCH LORDS WHO HAD BEEN PRISONERS IN TURKEY RETURN TO FRANCE.

YOU have heard that the count d'Eu, conſtable of France, died in his bed at Burſa in Turkey, to the great regret of all his friends, more eſpecially the king of France, who much loved him. The conſtableſhip became vacant by his death, and that office is of ſuch weight that it muſt not long remain ſo. Councils were therefore held to appoint his ſucceſſor, and the wiſer among them nominated the lord Louis de Sancerre, in which they were confirmed by the majority in the kingdom. He had been a very long time marſhal of France, and was ſo at the time of his election, reſiding in Languedoc. Being ſent for by the king to Paris, he was inveſted with the office of conſtable, and by this vacated the charge of marſhal; on which the king ſaid, that he had already thought of a ſucceſſor, for that no one ſhould have it but his knight the lord Boucicaut. All the lords

agreed to the propriety of this choice, for indeed he was deſerving of it, and when appointed was at Venice. He returned home ſhortly after this, for the ranſoms were paid, and the whole of thoſe who had been priſoners in Turkey came back to France, to the great joy of their friends and countrymen.

The lord Boucicaut was made marſhal of France; and the count de Nevers waited on the duke and ducheſs of Burgundy, and was well feaſted by them and others, for he was returned from a long and dangerous expedition, wherein he and his companions had ſuffered many perils, but through the grace of God, they had eſcaped, and were returned home. The count was ſeen with much pleaſure by all in Flanders, Artois and Burgundy, and other dependancies of his father, as he was their heir apparent. After he had remained ſome time with the duke and ducheſs, and had viſited the countries under their obedience, he determined to wait on the king of France and the duke of Orleans, both of whom received him honourably and kindly. He was made welcome by all the lords and ladies of the court. The king and the duke of Orleans were very glad to ſee him again, and eagerly liſtened to his relation of what he had ſuffered. They inquired news of Turkey, of the battle of Nicopoli, of the adventures he had met with, how he was made priſoner, and of the ſtate of Bajazet?'

The count ſatisfied them by his anſwers, for he was well ſpoken, and made no complaints, at leaſt

by

by ſpeech, of the ſultan, but ſaid he had found him courteous and affable, even to thoſe attached to his perſon; that he was very well treated; and he did not forget to tell the lords to whom he was ſpeaking, that Bajazet, on his taking leave, to quit Turkey, had ſaid, that he was born to bear arms, and make conqueſts in this world every year to a greater extent, and that he wiſhed not to prevent his priſoners from again taking up arms againſt him, for he would with pleaſure meet them in battle two, three, or four times if neceſſary; and that it was his intention to march to Rome, and feed his horſe on the altar of Saint Peter. The count added, that the ſultan thought our faith erroneous, and corrupted by thoſe who ought to have kept its purity; and the Turks laughed and made their jokes at it. Many Saracens declare that Chriſtianity, from the above cauſe, will be deſtroyed, and that the time is now come for its ruin; and that Bajazet was born to accompliſh this, and be king over all the world.

'Such was the language the interpreter tranſlated to me; and, from what I ſaw and heard, I believe they are perfectly well acquainted in Turkey, Tartary, Perſia, and throughout the whole of the infidels country, with our ſchiſms in the church, and how the Chriſtians are at difference, one with another, reſpecting the two popes of France and Italy; and the Saracens are wonderfully ſurpriſed how the kings of the different countries ſuffer it.'

This ſpeech of the count de Nevers gave the king and lords of France enough to think on. Some ſaid the Saracens were in the right to make their jokes and laugh, for prieſts were allowed to meddle too much in affairs that did not concern them; that it was time to lower their pomp, or force them to do it of themſelves.

The young clergy, who were ſtudying the Scriptures at the univerſity of Paris, could not obtain any benefices from this ſchiſm in the church, and were not diſpleaſed that the people murmured againſt the popes. They rejoiced at what the count de Nevers had related, and that the Turks and Saracens made deriſion of our faith. 'In good truth,' they added, 'they are in the right to laugh at it, and, if the king of France and the emperor of Germany do not ſpeedily attend to this ſchiſm, we foreſee that church-affairs will daily become worſe. All things conſidered, thoſe who have been neuter between the two popes have acted wiſely, and thus it behoves every one who wiſhes for union in the church.'

It was ſecretly told the king, by thoſe who loved him and were deſirous he ſhould regain his health, that it was the common opinion throughout France he would never be perfectly recovered until the church were properly regulated. They added, that his father, king Charles of happy memory, had, on his death-bed, charged his council with this matter; that he ſuſpected he had been deceived by theſe popes, and had made his determination too ſoon, for which he felt his conſcience

ſcience was loaded. He excuſed himſelf, ſaying, —‘ When our lord and father died, we were very young. We have followed the counſel of thoſe who have hitherto governed, and if we have acted wrong or fooliſhly, it has been their fault, and not ours; but, ſince we have had fuller information, we will ſoon attend to the buſineſs, and in ſuch a manner that the effect ſhall be apparent.’

The king of France paid more attention to this matter than he had ever done before, and promiſed himſelf and his council that he would provide a remedy. He ſpoke of it to his brother, the duke of Orleans, who inclined inſtantly to his opinion, as did the duke of Burgundy, for, notwithſtanding he had acknowledged the pope, who ſtiled himſelf Clement, he had no great faith in him: the prelates of France, particularly Guy de Roye, archbiſhop of Rheims, the archbiſhops of Sens, of Rouen, and the biſhop of Autun, had induced him to acknowledge Clement.

It was determined in a private council, that, if an union of the church were ſought for, it was neceſſary to have the aſſent of Germany. Learned men were therefore ſent as ambaſſadors to the king of Bohemia and Germany, who ſtiled himſelf king of the Romans. Maſter Philip des Playes was one of theſe ambaſſadors, who had inſtructions to prevail on the king of Germany to meet the king of France in the city of Rheims; and that no prelates, cardinals, archbiſhops or biſhops, might any way interrupt this meeting, or interfere with the object, it was publiſhed that the

cauſe for the two monarchs, with their councils, coming to Rheims, was to treat of a marriage between a ſon of the marquis of Brandenburgh, brother to the emperor, and a daughter of the duke of Orleans, and under cover of this they could treat of other matters.

During the time theſe negotiations were going forward, the lord Guy de Châtillon, count de Blois, departed this life in his hôtel at Aveſnes in Hainault. He was carried to Valenciennes and buried in the church of the Franciſcans, in a chapel called the Chapel of Artois. True it is, that he had made a large incloſure for the Franciſcans, and intended erecting his tomb within it; but he died ſo much in debt that his counteſs, the lady Mary of Namur, was obliged to renounce all claim to his moveables. She dared not act under his will, but retired to her dowry of the lands of Chimay and Beaumont, and the eſtates went to their right heirs. The duke of Orleans had the county of Blois, for which, during the late count's life, he had paid him two hundred thouſand crowns of France. The lands in Hainault, Holland, and Zealand, went to duke Albert of Bavaria: thoſe of Aveſnes, Landrecies and Louvion in Tierache, fell to John of Blois, more commonly called John of Brittany, to whom, if count Guy had not ſold it, the county of Blois would have devolved as to its right heir. Obſerve what miſchief a lord may do his heir by liſtening to bad advice*. [I make

* All between the crotchets is from the MSS. in the B. Muſeum and at Hafod, but not in the printed copies.

mention

mention of it becauſe the count Guy de Blois was very anxious, during his life, that I, ſir John Froiſſart, ſhould indite this hiſtory; and he was at great expenſes to forward it, for ſo conſiderable an undertaking cannot be accompliſhed without heavy charges. May God receive his ſoul! He was my lord and patron, of high honour and great renown, and had no need to make the pitiful bargains he did in the ſale of his eſtates; but he too readily believed thoſe who adviſed him to diſhonourable and profitleſs acts. The lord de Coucy, who died at Burſa, was very culpable in this buſineſs.] We will now return to the affairs of England.

CHAP. III.

THE DEATHS OF THE DUKE OF GLOCESTER AND THE EARL OF ARUNDEL.—THE MANNER IN WHICH THE DUKES OF LANCASTER AND YORK, AND THE LONDONERS, TAKE THE MATTER.

YOU have before ſeen, in the courſe of this hiſtory, that king Richard of England would not longer conceal the great hatred he bore his uncle of Gloceſter, but had determined to have him cut off, according to the advice given him, ſetting it forth to be more adviſeable to deſtroy

than be deſtroyed. You have likewiſe heard how the king had rode to the caſtle of Pleſhy, thirty miles from London, and with fair words had cajoled the duke out of his caſtle, and was accompanied by him to a lane that led to the Thames, where they arrived between ten and eleven o'clock at night; and how the earl marſhal, who there lay in ambuſh, had arreſted him in the king's name, and forced him towards the Thames, in ſpite of his cries to the king to deliver him. He was conſcious, that from the moment of his being thus arreſted, his end was reſolved on, and it was confirmed to him by the king turning a deaf ear to his complaints, and riding on full gallop to London, where he lodged that night in the Tower.

The duke of Gloceſter had other lodgings; for, whether he would or not, he was forced into a boat that carried him to a veſſel at anchor on the Thames, into which he was obliged to enter. The earl marſhal embarked alſo with his men, and, having a favourable wind and tide, they fell down the river, and arrived, late on the morrow evening, at Calais, without any one knowing of it except the king's officers. [The earl marſhal, as governor, could enter Calais at all hours, without any one thinking it extraordinary: he carried the duke to the caſtle, wherein he confined him.]

You may ſuppoſe, that when news was carried to Pleſhy of the duke of Gloceſter's arreſt, the ducheſs and her children were greatly diſmayed, and,

and, ſince ſuch a bold meaſure had been taken, were much afraid of the conſequences. Suſpecting the duke's life was in great danger, they conſulted ſir John Laquingay what would be beſt for them now to do. The knight adviſed them to ſend inſtantly to the dukes of Lancaſter and York, the duke's brothers; for by their mediation, perhaps, the king's choler would be appeaſed. He ſaw no other means, as the king would not chooſe to make them his enemies.

The ducheſs of Gloceſter followed this advice of the knight, and inſtantly diſpatched meſſengers to both, for they reſided at a diſtance from each other. They were much enraged at hearing their brother was arreſted, and returned anſwers to the ducheſs, not to be too much diſtreſſed at what had happened, for the king would not dare to treat him otherwiſe than by fair and legal meaſures, for it would not be ſuffered. This anſwer comforted the ducheſs and her children.

The king of England left the Tower of London at a very early hour, and rode to Eltham, where he remained. The ſame day, towards evening, the earls of Arundel and Warwick were brought to the Tower by the king's officers, and there confined, to the great ſurpriſe of the citizens. Their impriſonment cauſed many to murmur, but they were afraid to act, or do any thing againſt the king's pleaſure, leſt they might ſuffer for it. It was the common converſation of the knights, ſquires, and citizens of London, and in other towns,—'It is uſeleſs for us to ſay more on this matter,

matter, for the dukes of Lancaſter and of York, brothers to the duke of Gloceſter, can provide a remedy for all this whenever they pleaſe: they aſſuredly would have prevented it from happening, if they had ſuſpected the king had ſo much courage, or that he would have arreſted their brother; but they will repent of their indolence: and, if they are not inſtantly active, it will end badly.

When the duke of Gloceſter ſaw himſelf confined in the caſtle of Calais, abandoned by his brothers, and deprived of his attendants, he began to be much alarmed. He addreſſed himſelf to the earl marſhal, 'For what reaſon am I thus carried from England and confined here? It ſeems that you mean to impriſon me. Let me go and view the caſtle, its garriſon, and the people of the town.' 'My lord,' replied the earl, 'I dare not comply with your demands, for you are conſigned to my guard, under pain of death. The king our lord is at this moment ſomewhat wroth with you; and it is his orders that you abide here a while, in baniſhment with us, which you muſt have patience to do, until we have other news, and God grant that it may be ſoon! for, as the Lord may help me, I am truly concerned for your diſgrace, and would cheerfully aid you if I could, but you know the oath I have taken to the king, which I am bound in honour to obey.'

The duke of Gloceſter could not obtain any other anſwer. He judged, from appearances of things around him, that he was in danger of his life, and aſked a prieſt who had ſaid maſs, if he would

would confeſs him. This he did, with great calmneſs and reſignation, and with a devout and contrite heart cried before the altar of God, the Creator of all things, for his mercy. He was repentant of all his ſins, and lamented them greatly. He was in the right thus to exonerate his conſcience, for his end was nearer than he imagined. I was informed, that on the point of his ſitting down to dinner, when the tables were laid, and he was about to waſh his hands, four men ruſhed out from an adjoining chamber, and, throwing a towel round his neck, ſtrangled him, by two drawing one end and two the other. When he was quite dead, they carried him to his chamber, undreſſed him, and placed the body between two ſheets, with his head on a pillow, and covered him with furred mantles.

They then re-entered the hall, properly inſtructed what to ſay and how to act, and declared the duke of Gloceſter had been ſeized with a fit of apoplexy as he was waſhing his hands before dinner, and that they had great difficulty to carry him to bed. This was ſpoken of in the caſtle and town, where ſome believed it, but others not. Within two days after, it was publiſhed abroad that the duke of Gloceſter had died in his bed at the caſtle of Calais; and, in conſequence, the earl marſhal put on mourning, for he was nearly related to him, as did all the knights and ſquires in Calais.

News of this event was ſooner known in France and Flanders than in England. The French rejoiced

joiced much at it; for it was commonly reported that there would never be any ſolid peace between France and England as long as the duke of Gloceſter lived; and it was well remembered, that in the negotiations for peace he was more obſtinate in his opinions than either of his brothers; and, for this reaſon, his death was no loſs to France.

In like manner, many knights and ſquires of the king of England's houſehold, who were afraid of him, for his ſevere and rough manners, were pleaſed at his death. They recounted how he had driven the duke of Ireland to baniſhment, and had ignominiouſly beheaded that prudent and gallant knight ſir Simon Burley, who had been ſo much beloved by the prince of Wales, and had done eſſential ſervices to his country. The deaths of ſir Robert Trevilian, ſir Nicholas Brambre, ſir John Standwich and others, were not forgotten, ſo that the duke of Gloceſter was but little lamented in England, except by thoſe who were of his party and manner of thinking.

The duke's body was honourably embalmed at Calais, and put into a leaden coffin, with an outward one of wood, and tranſported in this ſtate by ſea to England. The veſſel that carried the body landed at Hadleigh caſtle, on the Thames, and thence it was conveyed on a car, unattended, to his caſtle of Pleſhy, and placed in the church which the duke had founded in honour of the Holy Trinity, with twelve canons to perform devoutly the divine ſervice. In this church was the duke buried.

The

The ducheſs of Gloceſter, her ſon Humphrey, and her two daughters, were ſorely grieved when the body of the duke arrived. The ducheſs had double cauſe of affliction, for the earl of Arundel, her uncle, had been publicly beheaded in Cheapſide by orders of the king. No baron nor knight dared to interpoſe, nor adviſe the king to do otherwiſe, for he was himſelf preſent at the execution, which was perſormed by the earl's ſon-in-law, the earl marſhal, who bandaged his eyes.

The earl of Warwick ran great riſk of ſuffering the ſame death, but the earl of Saliſbury, who was in favour with the king, interceded for him, as did many other barons and prelates. The king liſtened to their ſolicitations, on condition he were ſent to a place he could not leave, for he would never abſolutely pardon him, as he was deſerving death, for having joined the duke of Gloceſter and the earl of Arundel in their attempts to annul the truce which had been ſigned and ſealed by the kings of France and England, for themſelves and allies. This alone was a crime to be puniſhed by an ignominious death: for the conditions of the treaties were, that whoever ſhould break or infringe them was to be ſo puniſhed.

The earl of Saliſbury was very earneſt in his ſupplications for the earl of Warwick. They had been brothers in arms ever ſince their youth; and he excuſed him on account of his great age, and of his being deceived by the fair ſpeeches of the duke of Gloceſter and the earl of Arundel: that what had been done was not from his inſtigation,

but

but ſolely by that of others; and the houſe of Beauchamp, of which the earl of Warwick was the head, never imagined treaſon againſt the crown of England. The earl of Warwick was, therefore, through pity, reſpited from death, but baniſhed to the iſle of Wight, which is a dependancy on England. He was told,—'Earl of Warwick, this ſentence is very favourable, for you have deſerved to die as much as the earl of Arundel, but the handſome ſervices you have done in times paſt, to king Edward of happy memory, and the prince of Wales his ſon, as well on this as on the other ſide of the ſea, have ſecured your life; but it is ordered that you baniſh yourſelf to the iſle of Wight, taking with you a ſufficiency of wealth to ſupport your ſtate as long as you ſhall live, and that you never quit the iſland.'

The earl of Warwick was not diſpleaſed with this ſentence, ſince his life was ſpared, and, having thanked the king and council for their lenity, made no delay in his preparations to ſurrender himſelf in the iſle of Wight on the appointed day, which he did with part of his houſehold. The iſle of Wight is ſituated oppoſite the coaſt of Normandy, and has ſpace enough for the reſidence of a great lord, but he muſt provide himſelf with all that he may want from the circumjacent countries, or he will be badly ſupplied with proviſion and other things.

Thus were affairs carried on in England, and daily going from bad to worſe, as you will find it related. When the dukes of Lancaſter and

York

York heard of their brother's death at Calais, they inſtantly ſuſpected the king their nephew was guilty of it. At the time, they were not together, but each at his country ſeat, according to the cuſtom in England. They wrote to each other to conſult how they ſhould act on the occaſion, and haſtened to London becauſe they knew the citizens were very angry at the event. On their arrival, they had ſeveral meetings, and declared that the putting the duke of Gloceſter to death for ſome fooliſh words ought not to be paſſed over in ſilence, nor borne; for, although he had warmly oppoſed the treaty with France, he had not acted upon it; that there was an eſſential difference between talking and acting, and that words alone did not deſerve the ſevere puniſhment he had ſuffered, and that this matter muſt be inquired into and amended.

The two brothers were in a ſituation to have thrown England into confuſion, for there were enow who would have ſupported them, more eſpecially all the kindred of the late earl of Arundel, which is a powerful family in England, and the family of the earl of Stafford.

The king at this time reſided at Eltham, whither he had ſummoned all his vaſſals and dependants. He had collected round London, in the counties of Kent and Eſſex, upwards of ten thouſand archers. and had with him his brother ſir John Holland, the earl marſhal, the earl of Saliſbury, with many other great barons and knights. The king ſent orders to the citizens of London not to admit the duke of Lancaſter within their walls; but they replied,

plied, they knew of no reaſon why they ſhould refuſe him admittance, and the duke reſided there with his ſon the earl of Derby, as did the duke of York with his ſon the earl of Rutland. The king loved the earl of Rutland and the earl marſhal beyond meaſure: the firſt diſſembled his opinions concerning the death of the duke of Gloceſter, and would willingly have ſeen peace reſtored on both ſides. He ſaid, that his late uncle had on ſeveral occaſions treated the king very unbecomingly. The Londoners conſidered alſo, that great miſchiefs might befal England from theſe diſſentions between the king, his uncles, and their ſupporters; that, ſince the duke of Gloceſter was now dead, it could not be helped; and that he, in ſome meaſure, had been the cauſe of it, by his too great freedom of ſpeech, and from his attempts to excite the people of England to break the truces that had been ſigned between France and England. The citizens, therefore, prudently diſſembled their thoughts; and, as what was done could not now be undone, they feared, ſhould matters be puſhed to extremities, they might ſuffer very conſiderably in their commerce from the king of France.

The reſentments of the citizens began to cool, and they offered to mediate between the king and the duke of Lancaſter, who was mightily angered by the murder of his brother. He bethought himſelf, however, that as his nephew was married to the daughter of the king of France, ſhould he wage war againſt king Richard, his two daughters married in Caſtille and Portugal might

ſuffer

ſuffer for it, from the French carrying a war into thoſe countries. The duke was beſide forced to change his mind, whether he would or not, from the ſolicitations of the citizens of London and ſome of the Engliſh prelates, who had been the mediators between the king and his uncles. The king obtained peace, on promiſing from that day forward to be ſolely guided by the advice of the duke of Lancaſter, engaging never to do any thing without firſt conſulting him. The promiſe, however, he paid not any regard to, but followed the councils of the raſh and evil minded, for which hereafter he ſeverely ſuffered, as ſhall be related in this hiſtory.

Thus did the king of England gain peace from his uncles for the murder of the duke of Gloceſter, and now governed more fiercely than before. He went with his ſtate to Pleſhy in Eſſex, which had belonged to his uncle of Gloceſter, and ſhould have deſcended to his ſon Humphrey as heir to his father; but the king took poſſeſſion of it, for it is the rule in England for the king to have the wardſhip of all children who have loſt their fathers, and are under twenty-one years of age, at which period their eſtates are reſtored to them. King Richard took his couſin Humphrey of Gloceſter in ward, appropriating all his poſſeſſions to his own profit. He made him live with him, and the ducheſs and her two daughters with the queen.

The late duke of Gloceſter was by inheritance conſtable of England; but the king deprived his heir of it, and gave it his couſin the earl of Rut-

land. The king now assumed a greater state than ever king of England had done before, nor had there been any one who had expended such large sums by one hundred thousand nobles. He also took the wardship of the heir of Arundel, son to the late earl whom he had beheaded in London, as has been related, and forced him to live with him. And because one of the knights of the late duke of Gloceſter, named Cerbec*, had spoken too freely of the king and council, he was arrested and instantly beheaded. Sir John Lacquingay was likewise in some peril; but, when he saw the turn affairs had taken, he quitted the service of the duchess of Gloceſter, and fixed his abode elsewhere.

At this period there was no one, however great in England, that dared speak his sentiments of what the king did or intended doing. He had formed a council of his own from the knights of his chamber, who encouraged him to act as they advised. The king had in his pay full two thousand archers, who were on guard day and night, for he did not think himself perfectly safe from his uncles or the Arundel family†.

---

* Cerbec. It is Cerber and Cerbel.

† For more ample particulars respecting the murder of the duke of Gloceſter, I must refer the reader to Mr. Gough's history of Pleshy.

CHAP. IV.

A GREAT ASSEMBLY HOLDEN AT RHEIMS, BY THE EMPEROR OF GERMANY AND KING OF FRANCE, ON THE SCHISM IN THE CHURCH, AND ON THE MEANS OF UNITING THE TWO PARTIES.

AT this period, there was a numerous assembly of great lords in the city of Rheims, as well from the empire of Germany as from France, whose object was to restore union to the church. At the solicitation of the king of France, the emperor had come thither in person, attended by his ministers; but because they wished it not to be publicly known that this meeting was to consider of the rivalship of the two popes of Rome and of Avignon, they had it rumoured, that the lords of the empire came to Rheims to treat of a marriage between a son of the marquis of Brandenbourg, brother to the emperor, and a daughter of the duke of Orleans.

The king of France was lodged in the archbishop's palace, as were the dukes of Orleans, Berry, Burgundy, and count de Saint Pol, with other barons and prelates of France. When the emperor was about to make his entry into Rheims, all these lords and prelates, with Charles king of Navarre, went to meet him: after receiving

him moſt honourably, they conducted him firſt to the church of our Lady, and then to the abbey of Saint Remy, where he was lodged with all his lords. His attendants, and the others who had accompanied him, were placed as near to him as was poſſible; and the king of France had ordered, that all the expenſes of the emperor and Germans, during their reſidence in Rheims, ſhould be paid by his officers in the moſt ample manner. In conſequence, there were daily delivered to the Germans ten tons of herrings, for it was Lent, and eight hundred carp, without counting different ſorts of fiſh and other things, which coſt the king immenſe ſums.

When the emperor paid his firſt viſit to the king of France, the great lords before mentioned went to ſeek him at the abbey of Saint Remy, and conducted him in great ſtate to the palace. On the two monarchs meeting, they paid many compliments to each other, as they knew well how to do, eſpecially the king of France, for the Germans are a rude unmannered race, except in what regards their perſonal advantage, and in this they are active and expert enough. The lords of both countries, who were preſent, made acquaintance together with many outward ſigns of ſatisfaction: and the king of France entertained the whole at dinner, of which I will mention ſome particulars.

At the top of the king's table was ſeated the patriarch of Jeruſalem: next to him, the emperor, then the king of France and the king of Navarre: no more were at this table. At the others were

ſeated the lords from Germany; and they were waited on by the lords of France, for none of them ſat down. The dukes of Berry, Bourbon, and the count de St. Pol, with other great barons, placed the diſhes, and ſerved the king's table. The duke of Orleans ſupplied the company with ſuch quantities of plates of gold and ſilver as though they had been made of wood. The dinner was ſplendid, and abundantly well ſerved, and deſerving of remembrance. I was told that the king made a preſent to the emperor of all the gold and ſilver plate that was uſed, as well as what was on the ſide-board, with all the tapeſtry and ornaments of the apartment, whither the emperor retired after dinner to partake of wine and ſpices. This gift was eſtimated at two hundred thouſand florins; and the other Germans were preſented with magnificent gifts of gold and ſilver plate.

The Germans, and other ſtrangers who had come thither to view the feaſt, greatly wondered at the wealth and power of France.

During the reſidence of theſe monarchs at Rheims, their miniſters frequently met to conſider of the marriage of the marquis of Brandenburgh, and the reformation of the church. The marriage was agreed on, and publiſhed in Rheims, but their conſultations and reſolutions, concerning the church, were kept ſecret: what I ſhall ſay on the ſubject came to my knowledge afterward.

It was determined that Peter d'Ailly, biſhop of Cambray, ſhould be ſent as ambaſſador from the

emperor and the king of France to the perſon who ſtiled himſelf pope Boniface at Rome, and negociate with him in their names with the view of inducing him to ſubmit to a new election: ſhould the choice again fall on him, he would be acknowledged by them as pope, but, if not, then he was to reſign. The biſhop was to declare the ſame to the pope of Avignon; adding that, if either of the popes refuſed to comply with this diſpoſition of the two monarchs, they would be degraded, and every honour and profit of the church taken from them: that in this the kings of England, Scotland, Caſtille, Portugal and Navarre had joined. The emperor ſaid he would anſwer for his brother the king of Hungary, and all Bohemia and Germany, as far as Pruſſia, being of the ſame ſentiment. The monarchs likewiſe declared, that, on the biſhop's return from his embaſſy, they would exert themſelves, with their friends and allies, that what they had now agreed on ſhould be executed without any variation. Thus ended this meeting: the two monarchs ſeparated moſt amicably, and each returned to his uſual place of reſidence.

The duke of Burgundy refuſed to attend at Rheims; for he ſaid it would not anſwer any purpoſe, and that whatever might be given to the Germans, they would never keep the engagements they ſhould enter into. However, notwithſtanding this ſpeech of the duke, nothing was left undone, and matters were concluded as you have heard. Peter d'Ailly, biſhop of Cambray, was

not

not long in making preparations for his journey, and ſet out on his embaſſy to Rome and Avignon, to declare the engagements the emperor and king of France had entered into. The king of France ſent ambaſſadors to his ſon-in-law, the king of England, to acquaint him with what had been done, that he might unite in the ſame opinion. King Richard received the ambaſſadors with joy: and when he learnt the object of their miſſion, which was to entreat he would remain neuter, if he could not prevail on his ſubjects to unite with France and Germany, in caſe the two popes refuſed compliance, replied he would ſo manage that his kingdom ſhould act in the matter as he pleaſed. This he inſtantly promiſed, to the great joy of the ambaſſadors.

After they had ſtaid with the king and queen of England as long as they had choſen, they took leave and returned to Paris by Boulogne, and related all that had paſſed to the king and council. This was very agreeable to the king, and affairs remained in this ſtate ſome time.

The king of Navarre came to Paris to viſit the king of France, and thought he might perhaps recover his inheritance of Evreux in Normandy, which the king of France had ſeized from his father, as has been related in this hiſtory; but, in ſpite of every attempt, he was unſucceſsful. The king of Navarre, ſeeing he laboured in vain, took the matter in great diſpleaſure, and abruptly left the court of France, diſcontented with the king and his miniſters, and returned to Navarre.

We will now leave the affairs of Germany, France and Navarre, to ſpeak of what befel England, whence ſprung ſuch melancholy events as have not been recorded in this hiſtory, and which my readers will allow when they come to the detail of them.

CHAP. V.

THE EARL MARSHAL CHALLENGES THE EARL OF DERBY, SON TO THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, IN THE PRESENCE OF THE KING AND HIS COUNCIL.

KING Richard of England was of a temper that, when he took a liking to any one, he inſtantly raiſed him to high honours, and had ſuch confidence in him that no one dared to ſay any thing to his prejudice. At the ſame time, there had not been a king of England in the memory of man who ſo eaſily believed all that was told him. His favourites, however, paid no attention to the miſerable fate of many of their predeceſſors; how the duke of Ireland had been baniſhed, ſir Simon Burley, ſir Robert Treſilian, ſir Nicholas Brambre and others had loſt their lives, for counſels they had given the king, and for which the duke of Gloceſter had taken great pains in their deſtruction. The duke was now dead, and the favourites

of

of the moment, who continually counſelled the king as they pleaſed, were not ſorry, for they imagined no one would now pretend to oppoſe them.

Some about the king's perſon could not diſguiſe their pride and preſumption, eſpecially the earl marſhal, who was in the higheſt degree of favour. To flatter and pleaſe the king, and to ſhew how true and loyal a ſervant he was, whenever he heard any reports he told them to the king, expecting from ſuch means to riſe ſtill higher in favour; but many, thinking to advance, are repulſed. Thus it happened to the earl marſhal.

You muſt know that the earl of Derby and the late duke of Gloceſter had married two ſiſters, daughters to the earl of Hereford and Northampton, conſtable of England: the children, therefore, of the earl of Derby and duke of Gloceſter were couſins-german by their mother's ſide, and one degree removed by their father's. To ſay the truth, the death of the duke of Gloceſter had diſpleaſed many of the great barons of England, who frequently murmured at it when together; but the king had now ſo greatly extended his power, none dared ſpeak of it openly, nor act upon the current rumours of the mode of his death. The king had cauſed it to be proclaimed, that whoever ſhould ſay any thing reſpecting the duke of Gloceſter or the earl of Arundel ſhouſd be reckoned a falſe and wicked traitor, and incur his indignation. This threat had cauſed many to

be

be ſilent, afraid of what might befal them, who were, nevertheleſs, much diſſatisfied.

At this time, a converſation paſſed between the earl of Derby and the earl marſhal, in which the ſtate of the king and the counſellors whom he truſted became the ſubject of diſcuſſion. The earl marſhal caught at the following words the other had made uſe of, with a good intent, thinking they would never have been mentioned again, for they were neither arrogant nor traiterous: 'Holy Mary! fair couſin, what does the king next intend to do? Will he drive all the nobles out of England? There will ſoon be none left; and he plainly ſhews he is not deſirous to add to the honour of his realm.'

The earl marſhal made no reply, but treaſured this ſpeech in his mind, as he conſidered it very impertinent, in regard to the king, and thought within himſelf that the earl of Derby was well inclined to excite troubles in England, for he was marvellouſly beloved by the Londoners. He therefore determined (for the devil entered his brain, and what has been ordained to happen muſt come to paſs) to report this ſpeech in the preſence of the king and his nobility.

Soon after this converſation, the earl marſhal, to flatter and gain favour with the king, ſaid,—'My lord, all your enemies and ill-wiſhers are not dead, nor out of the kingdom.' The king changed colour, and replied, 'How, couſin, do you know this?' 'I know it well,' anſwered the earl marſhal: 'for the moment, I will not ſay more;

more; but, that you may provide a remedy in time, have it proclaimed that you will hold a ſolemn feaſt on this enſuing palm Sunday, and invite all the princes of your blood, particularly the earl of Derby, when you ſhall hear ſomething that will ſurpriſe you, and what you are not ſuſpicious of, notwithſtanding it ſo nearly concerns you.'

The king was very penſive on hearing this, and begged the earl marſhal to give him further information; that he might ſafely tell him all, for he would keep it ſecret. I know not if he did ſo; but the king, if he did, kept it to himſelf, and allowed the earl to act in the matter as he pleaſed; the conſequences of which were as follows.

The king had it proclaimed that he would hold a ſolemn feaſt at his palace of Eltham on palm Sunday, and ſent particular invitations to the dukes of Lancaſter and York and their children, who, not ſuſpecting any miſchief, came thither.

When the day of the feaſt was arrived, and all the lords had retired after dinner with the king to his council-chamber, the earl marſhal, having ſettled in his own mind how to act and what to ſay, caſt himſelf on his knees before the king, and thus addreſſed him:] 'Very dear and renowned lord, I am of your kindred, your liege man and marſhal of England; and I have beſide ſworn on my loyalty, my hand within yours, that I would never conceal from you any thing I might hear or ſee to your prejudice, on pain of being accounted a diſloyal traitor. This I am reſolved never

never to be, but to acquit myſelf before you and all the world.'

The king, fixing his eyes on him, aſked, 'Earl marſhal, what is your meaning in ſaying thus? We will know it.' 'Very dear lord,' replied the earl, 'as I have declared, I will not keep any ſecret from you: order the earl of Derby to come to your preſence, and I will ſpeak out.' The earl of Derby was called for, and the king made the earl marſhal riſe, for he addreſſed him on his knees. On the earl of Derby's arrival, who thought no harm, the earl marſhal ſpoke as follows: 'Earl of Derby, I charge you with having thought and ſpoke diſreſpectfully againſt your natural lord the king of England, when you ſaid he was unworthy to hold his crown: that without law or juſtice, or conſulting his council, he diſturbed the realm; and that, without any ſhadow of reaſon, he baniſhed thoſe valiant men from his kingdom who ought to be its defenders, for all of which I preſent my glove, and ſhall prove, my body againſt yours, that you are a falſe and wicked traitor.'

The earl of Derby was confounded at this addreſs, and retired a few paces, without demanding from the duke his father, or any of his friends, how he ſhould act. Having muſed a while, he advanced, with his hood in his hand, towards the king, and ſaid, 'Earl marſhal, I ſay that thou art a falſe and wicked traitor, which I will bodily prove on thee, and here is my glove.'

The

The earl marſhal, ſeeing his challenge was accepted, ſhewed a good deſire for the combat, by taking up the glove and ſaying,—'I refer your anſwer to the good pleaſure of the king and the lords now preſent. I will prove that what you have ſaid is falſe, and that my words are true.'

Each of theſe lords then withdrew with his friends, and the time for ſerving wine and ſpices was paſſed by; for the king ſhewed he was ſore diſpleaſed, and retired to his chamber and ſhut himſelf within it. His two uncles remained without with their children, as did the earl of Saliſbury and Huntingdon, the king's brother.

Soon afterward, the king called to him his uncles, and demanded from them how he was to act on this occaſion. 'Sire, order your conſtable hither, and we will tell you.' The earl of Rutland, conſtable of England, being ſent for, came, and he was told,—'Conſtable, go to the earl of Derby and the earl marſhal, and oblige them to promiſe not to quit the kingdom without the king's permiſſion.' The conſtable obeyed the order, and returned to the king's apartment. You may believe the whole court was greatly troubled by this event, and many barons and knights were much diſpleaſed, who blamed the earl marſhal for his conduct; but what he had ſaid he could not now retract, and he ſhewed by his manners that he made light of it, ſo arrogant and ſwollen with pride was his heart. The lords now ſeparated, each for his own home. The duke of Lancaſter, in ſpite of appearances, was much

vexed

vexed at what had paſſed, and his opinion was, that the king ſhould not have liſtened to ſuch a charge, but inſtantly have annihilated it; and in this he was joined by the more ſenſible barons of the country.

The earl of Derby reſided in London, for he had his houſe there, and kept up his ſtate. The duke of Lancaſter, the duke of York, the earl of Northumberland, and many other great lords, for he was much beloved, were his ſecurities to appear and anſwer the challenge. The earl marſhal was ſent to the Tower of London, where he lived with his houſehold. Theſe two lords made ample proviſion of all things neceſſary for the combat; and the earl of Derby ſent off meſſengers to Lombardy to have armour from ſir Galeas, duke of Milan. The duke complied with joy, and gave the knight, called ſir Francis, who had brought the meſſage, the choice of all his armour for the earl of Derby. When he had ſelected what he wiſhed for in plated and mail armour, the lord of Milan, out of his abundant love to the earl, ordered four of the beſt armourers in Milan to accompany the knight to England, that the earl of Derby might be more completely armed.

The earl marſhal, on the other hand, ſent into Germany, whence he thought he ſhould be ably aſſiſted by his friends. Each provided himſelf moſt magnificently, to outſhine the other; but the greater ſplendour was ſhewn by the earl of Derby, for I muſt ſay that, when the earl marſhal

undertook

undertook this buſineſs, he expected to have been better ſupported than he was by the king. It was hinted to the king, by thoſe near his perſon,—'Sire, you have no occaſion to interfere further in this matter: diſſemble your thoughts, and leave them to themſelves: they are fully capable of managing it. The earl of Derby is wondrous popular in the kingdom, but more eſpecially in London; and, ſhould the citizens perceive that you take part with the earl marſhal againſt the earl of Derby, you will irrecoverably loſe their affection.'

The king attended to this advice, for he knew it was true: in conſequence, he diſſembled his opinion, and ſuffered each to provide for himſelf. The news of this combat between the earl of Derby and the earl marſhal made a great noiſe in foreign parts: for it was to be for life or death, and before the king and great barons of England. It was ſpoken of differently: ſome ſaid, particularly in France,—'Let them fight it out: theſe Engliſh knights are too arrogant, and in a ſhort time will cut each other's throats. They are the moſt perverſe nation under the ſun, and their iſland is inhabited by the proudeſt people.' But others, more wiſe, ſaid,—'The king of England does not ſhew great ſenſe, nor that he is well adviſed, when for fooliſh words, undeſerving ſerious notice, he permits two ſuch valiant and noble lords, and of his kindred, thus to engage in mortal combat. He ought, according to the opinions of many wiſe men, to have ſaid, when he firſt heard

heard this charge,—'You earl of Derby, and you earl marſhal, are my near relations: I command, therefore, that you harbour no hatred nor malevolence againſt each other, but live like friends and couſins as you are. Should your ſtay in this country become tireſome, travel into foreign parts, to Hungary or elſewhere, and ſeek for deeds of arms and adventures.' If the king of England had done ſo, or come forward to prevent this combat, he would have acted wiſely, according to the opinions of men of ſenſe and prudence.'

The duke of Lancaſter was much vexed and melancholy at ſeeing the king of England, his nephew, thus badly conduct himſelf, but knew not to whom to open his thoughts. He, like a wiſe man, conſidered the conſequences that might enſue, and at times ſaid to thoſe he moſt confided in,—'Our nephew will ruin every thing before he have done: he too readily liſtens to evil counſellors, who will deſtroy him and his kingdom. Should he live long, he will loſe by little and little all it has coſt his predeceſſors and us ſo much pains to gain. He encourages diſcord between his nobles and great lords, by whom he ought to be honoured and ſerved, and the country guarded. He has put my brother to death, for it is now notorious he ordered it, and likewiſe the earl of Arundel, becauſe they told him the truth; but this he refuſes to hear, and will not liſten to any one who does not flatter his own imaginations. He cannot ſooner ruin his country than by exciting hatreds among his nobility and principal towns.

towns. The French are too ſubtle a race, for one misfortune that befals us they would wiſh ten, as they can never obtain their ends, or recover their domains, but through ourſelves; and every day there are examples of the miſery of kingdoms when divided. Such has been the unfortunate lot of France, Caſtille, Naples, and the Roman ſtate; and the preſent ſchiſm is the ruin of the contending popes, as well as the church. Flanders is another example which we have ſeen of ſelf-deſtruction. Frieſland is at this moment in a ſimilar ſtate, oppreſſed by the war of the count of Hainault, and ruining themſelves by domeſtic quarrels. We ſhall be in the ſame ſituation unleſs God prevent it, from the appearance of the preſent ſtate of affairs. The king has conſented that my ſon and heir, for I have none other by my two firſt marriages, ſhould be challenged to mortal combat for a mere trifle; and I, his father, dare not ſay a word againſt it, in regard to my own and my ſon's honour; for my ſon has the feelings of a knight, and is of ſufficient ſtrength to encounter the earl marſhal. Howbeit, let the beſt be made of it, they will never again love each other as they did before.'

Such were the converſations of the duke of Lancaſter. The two earls, in the mean time, were making every preparation for their combat. The duke of Lancaſter never went near the king, and as ſeldom ſaw his ſon, acting throughout with great good ſenſe. He knew the earl of Derby was very popular with all ranks in England, but

more particularly with the Londoners, who waited on him, and addreſſed him,—'Earl of Derby, make your mind eaſy: whatever may be the event of this combat it will turn out to your honour, in ſpite of the king and all his minions. We know well how things are managed, and what will be the reſult of them: this accuſation has been invented by envy, to cauſe your baniſhment out of the kingdom, where they are aware you are ſo greatly beloved by all ranks and ſexes; and, ſhould you be forced to quit us in ſorrow, you ſhall return in joy, for you are more worthy to rule than Richard of Bordeaux. Whoever may chooſe to ſearch the matter to the bottom, to diſcover the real origin of you both, will ſoon ſee that you have a greater right to the crown of England than he who wears it, although we have paid him homage, and acknowledged him for king theſe twenty years; but that was obtained by the entreaties of your grandfather, king Edward of happy memory, who was ſuſpicious of what we hint, and feared the conſequences. There was once a ſerious diſpute on this ſubject between king Edward and your grandfather by your mother's ſide, duke Henry of Lancaſter, but the great lords interfered and made up matters between them. King Edward was valiant and ſucceſsful in all his enterpriſes, and had gained the love of his ſubjects high and low. Your grandfather of Lancaſter only required from the king what was juſt, and ſerved him and his kingdom ſo loyally, that his conduct deſerved the commendation of all.

Every

Every one who knew him called him their old father. Theſe things are worthy of king Richard's conſideration, and may make him repent, if any thing can, at his leiſure, that he has not more prudently governed.'

Such converſations did many of the nobles and citizens of London hold with the earl of Derby, who was pleaſed with their affection, and received them kindly. He did not, however, neglect any preparations for his combat, but ſent to every one of his friends throughout England, to entreat their company at the appointed day and place.

King Richard, notwithſtanding he had ſuffered this challenge and appeal to arms to be made in his preſence, was uncertain how to act, and whether to allow the combat to take place or not. And, although he was the king of England the moſt feared of any who had worn the crown, he was guarded day and night by two thouſand archers, who were regularly paid weekly, and had confidence only in his brother the earl of Huntingdon, and the earls of Saliſbury and Rutland, his couſin, who were highly in his favour. He paid no regard to others, except a few of the knights of his chamber, who were his adviſers.

When the day for the combat was approaching, and the two lords had made their preparations, waiting only for the king's commands, king Richard's ſecret adviſers aſked, 'Sire, what is your intention reſpecting this combat between your two couſins, the earl of Derby and the earl marſhal? Will you permit them to proceed?' 'Yes,' re-

plied the king: 'why not? I intend to be preſent myſelf and to ſee their proweſs. We may perhaps learn, from the iſſue of this combat, what we are now ignorant of, although it may be very important for us to know, that we may provide accordingly; for there is no one ſo great in England, but, if he anger me, he ſhall dearly pay for it. Should I allow myſelf to be any way governed by my ſubjects they would ſoon overpower me: I know for certain that ſome of my kinſmen have held ſecret meetings reſpecting my government; but the moſt dangerous among them was the duke of Gloceſter, for in all England there was none more wrong-headed. He is now at peace, and henceforward we ſhall manage the reſt well enough. But tell me, I pray you, why you aſk the queſtion?'

'Sire,' replied they, 'we are bound to adviſe you to the beſt of our knowledge and abilities. We ſometimes hear and obſerve what you cannot, for you are in your apartments, and we abroad in the fields, or in London, where many converſations are held that nearly touch you, as well as us. There is yet time to provide a remedy, and we earneſtly adviſe you not to delay it.'

'What do you mean?' ſaid the king: 'ſpeak out, and do not ſpare me; for I wiſh to act rightly, and to maintain juſtice in my kingdom.'

'Sire, the common report throughout England, but eſpecially in London, is, that you are the cauſe of this combat, and that you have induced

duced the earl marſhal to challenge the earl of Derby. The Londoners in general, and many of the prelates and nobles, ſay, that you are in the direct road to deſtroy all your kindred and kingdom, but that they will not ſuffer it to be done. Now, were the citizens to riſe and be joined by the nobility, who could oppoſe them? You have no power but from your vaſſals; and they are now more ſuſpicious of you than ever, from your marriage with a princeſs of France; and you are leſs beloved by your ſubjects on this account. Know, that if you allow theſe two earls to meet in arms, you will not be lord of the field, but the Londoners, united with the earl of Derby's great connections by blood, who are all much attached to him. The earl marſhal is become very unpopular, particularly with the citizens of London, who would willingly put him to death. Three parts of the people of England ſay, that when you heard the charge of the earl marſhal, you ſhould have acted otherwiſe than you did, and checked the quarrel by telling them, 'You are both my couſins and liege men, and I command that peace be henceforward between you;' and that you ſhould have taken the earl of Derby by the hand, and led him to your chamber with every token of affection. Becauſe you did not this, the common report is, that you warmly take the part of the earl marſhal againſt the earl of Derby. Weigh well what we have ſaid, for we have told you the truth, and you never had more occaſion for good advice than at this moment.'

The king, on hearing theſe words, changed colour (for they had boldly ſpoken out, and certainly what they had ſaid could not be contradicted), turned aſide and leant on a window, where he muſed a conſiderable time. He then turned to thoſe who had addreſſed him, namely, the archbiſhop of York, the earls of Huntingdon and Saliſbury, and three other knights of his chamber, and ſaid,—'I have attentively heard every thing you have adviſed, and ſhould be blame-worthy if I followed not your counſel: conſider, therefore, how you would have me act.'

'Sire,' replied their ſpokeſman, 'what we have been talking of is matter of great danger. You muſt diſſemble your reſentments, and put an end to this buſineſs if you wiſh for peace and to preſerve your honour. You ought to pay more reſpect to the general opinion of your realm than to the idle talk of two knights. It is believed throughout England that the lord marſhal behaved himſelf very ill, and, by ſtirring up many things that were better forgotten, is deſirous to pick a quarrel with the earl of Derby, raiſe the people, and throw all things into confuſion. He muſt therefore ſuffer for ſo doing, and the earl of Derby be acquitted. We have conſidered the matter in every point of view, and adviſe that, before they arm or make further preparations, you ſend them your commands to appear before you, and to abide by whatever you determine between them. You will therefore give judgment, that, within fifteen days, the earl marſhal quit England,

England, without any hope of ever returning, and the earl of Derby be baniſhed thence for the ſpace of ten years. When the time for their departure arrives, you will, to pleaſe the people, abridge four years of the earl of Derby's ſentence, ſo that his baniſhment will be only for ſix years, but that he muſt not expect further favour. Such is the advice we give you: be very careful to prevent their meeting in arms, or the greateſt miſchiefs may ariſe from it.'

The king was thoughtful a moment, and replied, 'You have faithfully adviſed me, and it ſhall be done.'

CHAP. VI.

KING RICHARD OF ENGLAND BANISHES THE EARL OF DERBY FROM ENGLAND FOR TEN YEARS, AND THE EARL MARSHAL FOR HIS LIFE.

NOT long after this, the king of England ſummoned a large council of the great nobles and prelates at Eltham. On their arrival, he placed his two uncles of Lancaſter and York beſide him, with the earls of Northumberland, Saliſbury and Huntingdon. The earl of Derby and the earl marſhal were ſent for, and put into ſeparate chambers, for it had been ordered they

were not to meet. The king ſhewed he wiſhed to mediate between them, notwithſtanding their words had been very diſpleaſing to him, and ought not to be lightly pardoned. He required therefore that they ſhould ſubmit themſelves to his deciſion; and to this end ſent the conſtable of England, with four great barons, to oblige them to promiſe punctually to obey it.

The conſtable and the lords waited on the two earls, and explained the king's intentions. They both bound themſelves, in their preſence, to abide by whatever ſentence the king ſhould give. They having reported this, the king ſaid,—'Well then, I order that the earl marſhal, for having cauſed trouble in this kingdom, by uttering words which he could not prove otherwiſe than by common report, be baniſhed the realm: he may ſeek any other land he pleaſes to dwell in, but he muſt give over all hope of returning hither, as I baniſh him for life. I alſo order, that the earl of Derby, our couſin, for having angered us, and becauſe he has been, in ſome meaſure, the cauſe of the earl marſhal's crime and puniſhment, prepare to leave the kingdom within fifteen days, and be baniſhed hence for the term of ten years, without daring to return unleſs recalled by us; but we ſhall reſerve to ourſelf the power of abridging this term in part or altogether.'

The ſentence was ſatisfactory to the lords preſent, who ſaid; 'The earl of Derby may readily go two or three years and amuſe himſelf in foreign parts, for he is young enough; and, although he has

has already travelled to Pruſſia, the Holy Sepulchre, Cairo and Saint Catherine's, he will find other places to viſit. He has two ſiſters, queens of Caſtille and of Portugal, and may cheerfully paſs his time with them. The lords, knights and ſquires of thoſe countries, will make him welcome, for at this moment all warfare is at an end. On his arrival in Caſtille, as he is very active, he may put them in motion, and lead them againſt the infidels of Granada, which will employ his time better than remaining idle in England. Or he may go to Hainault, where his couſin, and brother in arms, the count d'Oſtrevant, will be happy to ſee him, and gladly entertain him, that he may aſſiſt him in his war againſt the Frieſlanders. If he go to Hainault, he can have frequent intelligence from his own country and children. He therefore cannot fail of doing well, whitherſoever he goes; and the king may ſpeedily recall him, through means of the good friends he will leave behind, for he is the fineſt feather in his cap; and he muſt not therefore ſuffer him to be too long abſent, if he wiſh to gain the love of his ſubjects.

'The earl marſhal has had hard treatment, for he is baniſhed without hope of ever being recalled; but, to ſay the truth, he has deſerved it, for all this miſchief has been cauſed by him and his fooliſh talking: he muſt therefore pay for it.' Thus converſed many Engliſh knights with each other, the day the king paſſed ſentence on the earl of Derby and the earl marſhal.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

THE EARL OF DERBY, IN CONSEQUENCE OF HIS BANISHMENT, LEAVES ENGLAND FOR FRANCE. —THE EARL MARSHAL, IN OBEDIENCE TO HIS SENTENCE, GOES TO FLANDERS, AND THENCE INTO LOMBARDY.

WHEN the two earls heard the ſentence the king had paſſed on them, they were much caſt down, and not without cauſe. The earl marſhal bitterly repented what he had ſaid and done, but he could not foreſee its conſequences: he had firmly relied on being otherwiſe ſupported by the king than he was, or he would not have thought of it. It was, however, neceſſary to make his preparations for baniſhment. He ſettled the payments of his income through the Lombards of Bruges, and, quitting England, arrived at Calais, where he had been governor. He ſtaid there a ſhort time, to receive part of his equipage which had been left behind.

On his departure he took leave of the townſmen of Calais, and, having fixed his route, would not go to France nor Hainault, for he had not any buſineſs at theſe places, but went to Bruges, where he ſtaid fifteen days.

On leaving this town, he viſited Ghent, Mechlin, Louvain, St. Tron, Utrecht, Aix and Cologne, where we will leave him, and ſpeak of the earl of Derby,

Derby, who in like manner made his preparations for obeying his ſentence of baniſhment.

When the day of his exile drew near, he went to Eltham, where the king reſided. He found there his father, the duke of York his uncle, and with them the earl of Northumberland, ſir Henry Percy his ſon, and a great many barons and knights of England, vexed that his ill fortune ſhould force him out of England. The greater part of them accompanied him to the preſence of the king, to learn his ultimate pleaſure as to this baniſhment.

The king pretended that he was very happy to ſee theſe lords: he entertained them well, and there was a full court on the occaſion. The earl of Saliſbury, and the earl of Huntingdon who had married the duke of Lancaſter's daughter, were preſent, and kept near to the earl of Derby, whether through diſſimulation or not I am ignorant.

When the time for the earl of Derby's taking leave arrived, the king addreſſed his couſin with great apparent humility, and ſaid, 'that as God might help him, the words which had paſſed between him and the lord marſhal had much vexed him; and that he had judged the matter between them to the beſt of his underſtanding, and to ſatisfy the people, who had murmured greatly at this quarrel. Wherefore, couſin,' he added, 'to relieve you ſomewhat of your pain, I now remit four years of the term of your baniſhment, and reduce it to ſix years inſtead of ten. Make your preparations, and provide accordingly.'

'My lord,' replied the earl, 'I humbly thank you;

you; and, when it ſhall be your good pleaſure, you will extend your mercy.'

The lords preſent were ſatisfied with the anſwer, and for this time were well pleaſed with the king's behaviour, for he received them kindly. Some of them returned with the earl of Derby to London. The earl's baggage had been ſent forward to Dover, and he was adviſed by his father, on his arrival at Calais, to go ſtraight to Paris, and wait on the king of France and his couſins the princes of France, for by their means he would be the ſooner enabled to ſhorten his exile than by any other. Had not the duke of Lancaſter earneſtly preſſed this matter, like a father anxious to conſole his ſon, he would have taken the direct road to the count d'Oſtrevant in Hainault.

The day the earl of Derby mounted his horſe to leave London, upwards of forty thouſand men were in the ſtreets bitterly lamenting his departure: 'Ah, gentle earl! will you then quit us? This country will never be happy until your return, and the days until then will be inſufferably long. Through envy, treachery and fear are you driven out of a kingdom where you are more worthy to reſide than thoſe who cauſe it. You are of ſuch high birth and gallantry, that none others can be compared to you. Why then will you leave us, gentle earl? You have never done wrong by thought or deed, and are incapable of ſo doing.'

Thus did men and women ſo piteouſly complain, that it was grievous to hear them. The earl of Derby was not accompanied by trumpets,

nor

nor the muſic of the town, but with tears and lamentations. Some of the knights who attended him whiſpered each other—'See the conduct of the people, how readily they complain for trifles! Whoever is inclined to ſtir up the Londoners againſt the king may ſoon effect it, and force the king to ſeek another country, and the earl of Derby to remain: but this is not the moment, for, ſince my lord of Lancaſter ſuffers it, we muſt be patient.'

The mayor of London and ſeveral of the principal citizens, accompanied the earl of Derby as far as Dartford: ſome even rode to Dover with him, and remained in his company until he embarked on board the veſſel that was to convey him to Calais, when they returned to their homes. The earl of Derby, before his arrival at Calais, had ſent a knight and herald to the king of France, and to the dukes of Orleans, Berry, Burgundy and Bourbon, to know if it were agreeable to them that he ſhould fix his reſidence in Paris, paying punctually for all that he or his people might want, and if the court would receive him.

The king of France, his brother and uncles, readily complied with his requeſt, and apparently ſeemed very glad that he would come there; for, as they aſſured the knight, they very ſincerely felt for the preſent diſgrace of the earl. The knight and herald, on their return, met the earl at Calais; and the king of France had ſent with them ſir Charles de Hangiers, to have all the cities and towns opened to the Engliſh as they travelled to Paris.

Paris. The earl of Derby ſet out in gallant array, becoming his rank, and took the road to Amiens, where, and in every other town, he was handſomely received.

CHAP. VIII.

THE COUNT D'OSTREVANT SENDS AMBASSADORS TO THE EARL OF DERBY.—THE EARL ARRIVES AT PARIS.

THE moment William earl of Oſtrevant, who reſided at Queſnoy, heard that his couſin the earl of Derby had croſſed the ſea, and was at Calais, he ordered ſir Ançel de Traſſaguies and ſir Fierabras de Vertain to ride thither and wait on the earl, and invite him to Hainault, whither if he pleaſed to come and amuſe himſelf he would give him a hearty welcome, for it would be very agreeable to himſelf and his counteſs. The two knights obeyed the earl's orders, and rode to Cambray and Bapaumes; for they had heard the earl of Derby had left Calais, and taken the road towards Paris through Amiens.

They determined, in conſequence, to puſh forward, and overtook the earl of Derby on his road, to whom they punctually delivered their meſſage. The earl thanked them, as well as his couſin of Hainault who had ſent them, but excuſed himſelf for

for the preſent from accepting their invitation, as he was engaged to viſit the king of France and his couſins, but that he did not renounce the affection and courteſy the count d'Oſtrevant offered him. The two knights, having executed their commiſſion, took leave, and returned to Hainault, to report all they had ſeen and heard, and the earl continued his journey to Paris.

When news was brought to the king, and the dukes of Orleans, Berry and Burgundy, that the earl of Derby was approaching Paris, the principal French lords inſtantly made handſome preparations to go out and meet him. The apartments of the hôtel de Saint Pol were richly furniſhed; and the great barons then in the town ſet out for Saint Denis.

The king remained at the hôtel de Saint Pol; but the dukes of Orleans and Berry left Paris, and firſt met the earl of Derby: then came the dukes of Burgundy and Bourbon, and the lord Charles d'Albret, with many great prelates and barons. Their meeting was joyous on both ſides, and they entered Paris in brilliant array.

An unfortunate accident happened on this occaſion, which I will relate. A prudent and valiant ſquire, called Boniface, a native of Lombardy, was mounted on a ſtrong courſer that had not been well broken. When paſſing through the ſtreets, he roſe upon his hind legs, and the ſquire, checking by the bridle, pulled him ſo hard that he fell backward, and threw Boniface with ſuch force on the pavement, that his ſkull was fractured. Thus

died

died Boniface, to the great regret of many lords, particularly the duke of Orleans, by whom he was much eſteemed. He had been a favourite with the late lord de Coucy, who had brought him from Lombardy to France.

The proceſſion at length arrived at the hôtel de Saint Pol, where the king was waiting: he received very kindly his couſin the earl of Derby, who having been well educated, behaved ſo agreeably to the king, that he was much liked, and, in token of his favour, the king gave him his order to wear. The earl accepted it with pleaſure, and returned his thanks. I cannot pretend to ſay all that paſſed between them, but the meeting ſeemed to their mutual ſatisfaction.

When wine and ſpices had been ſerved, the earl took leave of the king, and waited on the queen, who reſided in other apartments of the ſame palace. He ſtaid there ſome time, for the queen entertained him handſomely. On taking leave, he went to the court and mounted his horſe, and was eſcorted to his hôtel by the lords of France, where he ſupped that night with his own people.

Such was his reception at Paris: there were many grand entertainments made to amuſe him, and that he might think the leſs on his baniſhment from his own country, which was very diſpleaſing to the French lords. [In ſpite of all their kind endeavours, he at times was very melancholy, and not without reaſon, on being thus ſeparated from his family. He was impatient to return, and much vexed that for ſuch a frivolous cauſe he

ſhould

ſhould be baniſhed from England, and from his four promiſing ſons, and two daughters. The earl frequently dined with the king, the duke of Orleans, and other great barons, who did every thing they could to make his time paſs agreeably.]

We will now leave the earl of Derby, to ſpeak of the affairs of the church, and of the two popes, Benedict of Avignon and Boniface of Rome.

CHAP. IX.

THE EMPEROR AND THE KING OF FRANCE PURSUE THE PLANS THEY HAD SETTLED AT RHEIMS, FOR AN UNION OF THE CHURCH.—THE BISHOP OF CAMBRAY IS SENT BY THEM TO THE POPE AT ROME.—THE ANSWER THAT IS MADE HIM.

YOU have before heard of the meeting which had taken place at Rheims between the emperor and the king of France, when many ſecret councils were held, on eſtabliſhing the union of the church, for the preſent ſchiſm was diſgraceful. In conſequence of the plans then formed, Peter d'Ailly, biſhop of Cambray, was ſent ambaſſador to pope Boniface at Rome. The biſhop ſet out, and met the pope at Fondi, to whom he delivered his credential letters from the king and the emperor.

The pope, having examined them, was ſatisfied of their validity, and received the biſhop kindly, for he gueſſed the object of his miſſion. The ambaſſador explained the cauſe of his coming, which the pope attentively liſtened to, and thus replied: 'That the anſwer his propoſitions required did not only perſonally attach to him, but to all his brother-cardinals, who might aſpire to the papacy. He would ſummon a conſiſtory, and, when they had fully conſidered the matter, would give him an anſwer that ſhould be ſatisfactory. This was, for the preſent, ſufficient for the biſhop of Cambray, who dined that day at the palace of the pope with ſome of his cardinals, and then, leaving Fondi, went to Rome.

Shortly after, pope Boniface held a convocation of cardinals at Rome; for he had quitted Fondi, and reſided at the vatican. No one was preſent at this conſiſtory but the pope and cardinals, before whom he laid the propoſitions of the biſhop of Cambray, and demanded advice what anſwer he ſhould make to them. Much diſcuſſion enſued; for the cardinals were averſe to undo what they had done, thinking it would turn out to their diſgrace. They ſaid to the pope.—'Holy father, conſidering our ſituation, we think you ſhould conceal your real ſentiments on this matter: but to encourage the hopes of the king of France and thoſe of his creed, you will in your anſwer declare your willingneſs to comply with whatever the emperor of Germany, the king of Hungary and the king of England ſhall adviſe you; that the

perſon

perſon who reſides at Avignon, and ſtiles himſelf pope Benedict, whom the king of France and his nation have acknowledged, muſt firſt reſign all claims to the papacy; and that then you will cheerfully attend a general council, wherever the above-named kings ſhall appoint, and bring your brother-cardinals with you.'

This advice was very agreeable to Boniface, who replied, in conformity to it, but in more general terms, to the biſhop of Cambray, who acquitted himſelf honourably in the buſineſs he had been ſent upon.

When the Romans heard that the emperor and the king of France had written to the pope to reſign his dignity, great were the murmurings throughout the city; for the Romans were fearful they ſhould loſe the holy ſee, which was of infinite conſequence to them and profit, from the general pardons that were perſonally ſought for, and which obliged ſuch multitudes to viſit Rome. The jubilee was ſoon to take place, for which they had made great preparations; and they were uneaſy leſt they might have incurred theſe expenſes for nothing.

The principal inhabitants of Rome waited on the pope, and ſhewed him greater love than ever, ſaying: 'Holy father, you are the true pope: remain in the inheritance and patrimony of the church, which belonged to St. Peter, and let no one adviſe you to do otherwiſe. Whoever may be againſt you, we will always continue your ſteady friends, and expend our lives and fortunes in the defence of your right.'

Pope Boniface replied,—'My children, be comforted, for I will never reſign the popedom; and, whatever the emperor or the king of France may do, I will not ſubmit myſelf to their wills.'

The Romans were ſatisfied with this anſwer, and returned to their homes. The biſhop of Cambray took no notice of this, but proceeded in the buſineſs he had been charged with. I fancy pope Boniface kept ſteady in his anſwer, that when it ſhould be publicly known pope Benedict had reſigned the papacy, he would act in ſuch manner as ſhould be agreeable to thoſe who had ſent him.

The biſhop, not being able to obtain more, departed for Germany, and found the emperor at Conſtance, to whom he delivered the anſwer you have heard. The emperor ſaid,—'Biſhop, you will carry this to the king of France, our brother and couſin; and, accordingly as he ſhall act, ſo will I and the empire; but, from what I ſee, he muſt begin firſt, and when he has depoſed his pope, we will depoſe ours.'

The biſhop took leave of the emperor, and ſet out for Paris, where the king and his lords were expecting him. He delivered the anſwer from the pope, and the meſſage from the emperor, which was kept ſecret until the king ſhould aſſemble a great council of his nobles, to have their advice on the matter.

CHAP. X.

THE KING OF FRANCE, IN CONFORMITY TO THE ADVICE OF HIS NOBLES AND THE UNIVERSITY OF PARIS, SENDS THE BISHOP OF CAMBRAY TO POPE BENEDICT AT AVIGNON, ON THE SUBSECT OF AN UNION OF THE CHURCH, AND ALSO HIS MARSHAL BOUCICAUT THITHER, TO CONSTRAIN THE POPE TO OBEDIENCE BY FORCE OF ARMS SHOULD THERE BE OCCASION.

THE king of France, in conſequence of the anſwer of pope Boniface, and the meſſage of the emperor, that the pope at Avignon muſt be the firſt depoſed, aſſembled the nobles and prelates of his kingdom at Paris.

Prior to this, ſome of the prelates of France, ſuch as the archbiſhop of Rheims, ſir Guy de Roye, the archbiſhops of Rouen and of Sens, the biſhops of Paris, Beauvais and Autun, had ſtrongly ſupported the pope of Avignon, particularly Clement, who had promoted them to their benefices. Theſe ſix prelates, therefore, by particular orders, were not ſummoned to this council, but others in their room, and the heads of the univerſity of Paris.

After the biſhop of Cambray had fully explained to the aſſembly the object of his embaſſy to Rome, what he had done there, the pope's anſwer, and the meſſage from the emperor, for he had re-

turned through Germany, they began to diſcuſs the matter, and it was reſolved the univerſity ſhould have the preponderating voice. It was determined in this council, to the ſatisfaction of the king, the duke of Orleans, their uncles, and all the members of it, that the king of France ſhould ſend his marſhal, the lord Boucicaut, to Avignon, to prevail on pope Benedict, by negotiation or force, to reſign the papacy, and ſubmit himſelf to the determination of the king and his council; that the church in France ſhould remain neuter as to the true pope, until union were reſtored to it, according to the decrees of a general council of prelates and churchmen which was to be inſtantly called.

This reſolution ſeemed good to every one, and was adopted by the king of France, and all who had formed the council. The marſhal of France and the biſhop of Cambray were ordered to Avignon; and theſe two lords left Paris ſoon afterwards, travelling in company as far as Lyons, where they ſeparated. The marſhal was to remain at Lyons until he heard from the biſhop, who continued his journey to Avignon, to learn what anſwer the perſon who ſtiled himſelf pope at Avignon would make to the propoſals from the king of France.

On his arrival at Avignon, he fixed his lodgings in the great wood market. Some of the cardinals ſuſpected the cauſe of his coming, ſince he was ſent by the king of France, but they diſſembled their thoughts until they heard what he had to ſay,

and

and obſerved how Benedict ſhould anſwer and conduct himſelf. As ſoon as the biſhop of Cambray had taken ſome refreſhments and changed his dreſs, he waited on the pope in his palace. He made him, when in his preſence, the proper obeiſances, but not ſo reverently as if he and all the world acknowledged him for the true pope, although he had given him the biſhoprick of Cambray, through the recommendation of the lords in France.

The biſhop, being well verſed in Latin and French, made an eloquent harangue, to explain the object of his miſſion from the emperor and the king of France. When the pope heard that it was the intention of theſe two monarchs that he as well as pope Boniface ſhould reſign their dignities, he frequently changed colour, and, raiſing his voice, ſaid,—'I have laboured hard for the good of the church, and have been duly elected pope, yet now my reſignation is ſought: this I will never conſent to as long as I live; and I wiſh the king of France to know that I ſhall not pay any attention to his regulations, but will keep my name and dignity until death.'

'Sire,' anſwered the biſhop of Cambray, 'I always thought you, under reverence, more prudent than I find you really are. Fix a day for the meeting of your cardinals, to conſult with them on your anſwer; for, unleſs they agree with you, your oppoſition will be in vain againſt them and againſt the powers of Germany and France.'

Upon this, two cardinals of his creation, who foreſaw that matters would end badly, ſtepped forward and ſaid, 'Holy father, the biſhop of Cambray adviſes you well: follow what he ſays, we entreat you.' The pope replied, he would do ſo willingly: the audience was put an end to, and the biſhop returned to his lodgings, without waiting on any of the cardinals.

On the next morning, the conſiſtory bell was rung, and a conclave holden of all the cardinals then at Avignon, at the pope's palace. The biſhop of Cambray diſcourſed in Latin on the reaſons why he was come thither, and on the object of thoſe who had ſent him. When he had finiſhed ſpeaking, he was told they would maturely conſider the buſineſs, and give him an anſwer, but that at preſent he muſt withdraw. He went elſewhere to amuſe himſelf, while Benedict and his cardinals debated his propoſals. They were for a conſiderable time in council, and many thought it very hard to undo what had been regularly effected; but the cardinal of Amiens ſaid,—'My fair ſirs, whether we will or not, we muſt obey the orders of the emperor of Germany and the king of France, ſince they are now united; for, without their good pleaſure, we cannot exiſt. We might indeed withſtand the emperor, if the king of France would ſupport us, but, as that is no longer the caſe, we muſt ſubmit, or he will exclude us from all our benefices, and how then are we to live? In truth, holy father, we have elected you

pope,

pope, on condition that you would exert yourſelf in the reform of abuſes in the church, and promote an union, all of which you have ſtrenuouſly promiſed to do until this day. Anſwer for yourſelf, therefore, in a temperate manner, that we may praiſe you, for you muſt be better acquainted with your own mind and courage than we are.'

Many of the cardinals ſpoke at once, and ſaid; 'Holy father, the cardinal of Amiens ſpeaks well, and we beg of you to let us know your intentions.' Upon this, Benedict replied,—'I have always had an earneſt deſire for an union of the church, and have taken great pains to promote it; but ſince, through the grace of God, you have raiſed me to the papacy, I will never reſign it, nor ſubmit myſelf to any king, duke or count, nor agree to any treaty that ſhall include my reſignation of the popedom.'

The cardinals now all roſe, and there was much murmuring: ſome ſaid he had well ſpoken, and others the contrary. Thus was the conclave broken up in diſcord, and many of the cardinals departed to their hôtels without taking leave of the pope. Thoſe who were in his good graces remained with him.

When the biſhop of Cambray obſerved the manner in which the cardinals left the palace, he knew there had been great diſagreement, and entering the hall of the conclave, advanced up to Benedict, who was ſtill on his throne, and, without much reſpect, ſaid,—'Sire, give me an anſwer: I cannot wait longer: for your council is diſmiſſed.

diſmiſſed. You muſt let me have your final determination on the propoſals I made you, as I am now about to depart hence.'

Pope Benedict, ſtill heated by anger at the ſpeech of the cardinal of Amiens, replied,—'Biſhop, I have conſulted my brother-cardinals, who have elected me to this dignity, and they agree that every due ſolemnity has been uſed, ſuch as is uſual in ſuch caſes. Since, therefore, I am pope, and acknowledged as ſuch by all my ſubjects, I will preſerve it as long as I live, and will not, though it coſt me my life, renounce it, for I have never done any thing to forfeit the divine protection. You will tell our ſon of France, that hitherto we have conſidered him as a good Catholic; but that, from the bad advice he has lately received, he is about to embrace errors which he will repent of. I entreat that you would beg of him, from me, not to follow any councils the reſult of which may trouble his conſcience.'

On ſaying this, Benedict roſe from his throne and retired to his chamber, attended by ſome of his cardinals. The biſhop of Cambray went to his inn, dined ſoberly, and then, mounting his horſe, croſſed the Rhône, paſſed through Villeneuve, and lay at Bagnols*, which belongs to France. He there heard that the lord Boucicaut, marſhal of France, was at Saint Andrieu, within nine leagues

* Bagnols,—a town in lower Languedoc, three leagues from the Pont du Saint Eſprit, and fifty-two from Lyons.

of

of Avignon, and thither the biſhop went on the following day and related to him all that had paſſed, with the anſwer he had received from Benedict, who ſtiled himſelf pope.

CHAP. XI.

IN CONSEQUENCE OF THE ANSWER OF POPE BENEDICT, THE MARSHAL BOUCICAUT OBLIGES HIM BY FORCE OF ARMS TO SUBMIT HIMSELF TO THE WILL OF THE KING OF FRANCE RESPECTING AN UNION OF THE CHURCH.

WHEN the marſhal of France had heard from the biſhop of Cambray the pope's anſwer, and that he refuſed to ſubmit himſelf to the king of France, he ſaid to him,—'Biſhop, you may now return to France, for you have nothing more to do here, and I will execute what I have been charged with by the king, my lords his uncles and the council.' The biſhop replied, 'God's will be done.' He remained that day in the village, and on the morrow departed, taking his road toward Puy in Auvergne.

The marſhal inſtantly ſet clerks and meſſengers to work in ſummoning the knights, ſquires and men at arms in the Viverais, Auvergne, and from the countries as far as Montpellier, for he was commiſſioned

commiſſioned ſo to do by the king of France. He ordered the ſénéſchal of Beaucaire to ſhut up all the paſſes to Avignon, as well on the Rhône as by land, that nothing might enter that place, nor be ſent thither from the Pont du Saint Eſprit, for he was particularly anxious that it ſhould not be ſupplied with proviſions or ſtores. The ſummons of the marſhal was readily obeyed, by ſome through attachment, but by many in the expectation of plundering Avignon.

Sir Raymond de Touraine came with pleaſure to the marſhal, who was ready to march, in company with the lords de la Both, de Tournon, de Monclau and d'Uzès and others, ſo numerous, that the marſhal ſent a herald with his defiance to the pope in his palace, and to his cardinals in Avignon.

This was a ſevere blow to the cardinals, and to the inhabitants, for they knew well they could not long effectually withſtand the power of the king of France. They called a council of the cardinals and principal perſons in the town, and, in conſequence, waited on Benedict, and temperately remonſtrated with him, that they were unable and unwilling to ſupport a war againſt the king of France, for it was neceſſary they ſhould carry on their commerce, by land and water, to live. Benedict, like a madman, replied,—'Your city is ſtrong, and well provided with ſtores and proviſions. I will ſend to Genoa and elſewhere for men at arms; and write to my ſon the king of Arragon, who is the ſtandard-bearer of the church, to come to my

aſſiſtance,

aſſiſtance, which he will do, for he is bound to it by two reaſons, I am his kinſman, and he owes obedience to the pope. Do you depart hence and guard your town, and I will defend my palace, for you are alarmed at trifles.'

This was all the anſwer they could obtain from the pope, and the cardinals and townſmen retired to their houſes. The pope, whom I call Benedict, had, for a long time before, laid up in his palace great quantities of wines, corn, ſalted meat, oil, and of every neceſſary ſtore for a fortreſs. He himſelf was a bold and determined character, not eaſily diſmayed.

The marſhal Boucicaut marched from the town of Saint Eſprit, and, with the conſent of the prince of Orange, paſſed through Orange with his army, and entered the comtat Venaiſſin, belonging to the church, which was ſoon overrun. The men at arms croſſed the bridge at Sorgues *, and were maſters of each ſide of that river. The marſhal left ſome men in the town to guard it and defend the paſſage, and oppoſe the garriſon of Noues, that held out for the pope. He then fixed his head quarters at Saint Verain, near Avignon, and his army was daily increaſing.

The city of Avignon was now ſo completely ſurrounded, that nothing could enter by land or water without leave. The ſénéſchal of Beaucaire's quarters were at Villeneuve, cloſe to Avignon,

* The river Sorgues takes its riſe from the ſpring at Vaucluſe.

though

though belonging to France, and he, with five hundred combatants, guarded that ſide of the town. The marſhal of France, with two thouſand men at arms, was on the oppoſite ſide: he ſent notice to the townſmen, that if they did not open their gates, and ſubmit themſelves to his will, he would burn and deſtroy all the houſes and vineyards as far as the river Durance. This greatly diſmayed the inhabitants of both ſexes, who had their inheritances in that part of the country, and they called a council, to which they admitted the cardinals of Amiens, Poitiers, Neufchâteau and Viviers, to have their advice. The townſmen, who were the moſt intereſted in the marſhal's menace, informed the meeting of their fears leſt he ſhould execute it, ſaying it was made by orders from the king of France, whom they were not prepared to reſiſt, nor could they do ſo with effect, for he was too near a neighbour; and that, conſidering all things, it would be much better to ſubmit themſelves to the king of France than remain obſtinate in the ſupport of Benedict, who was unable to afford them any aſſiſtance.

They aſked the cardinals if they would join them. The cardinals ſaid they would. Proviſions began to be ſcarce in Avignon; beſides, their benefices were in France, which they would not loſe; and they agreed with the townſmen in their treaty with the marſhal. The terms of the treaty were, that he and his army ſhould be admitted into Avignon, to beſiege the palace, but that no violence ſhould be done to the cardinals, their dependants,

pendants, nor the townſmen. This the marſhal, the French lords, and captains of the men at arms, ſwore faithfully to obſerve. When this was done, the army entered the town, and lodged themſelves at their eaſe, for it was large enough, and took off all obſtructions on the Rhône and at the gates, to allow free liberty for the entrance of proviſions.

Pope Benedict was much caſt down when he heard that his cardinals and the townſmen had concluded a treaty with the marſhal of France, without conſulting him. He ſaid, he would never ſurrender ſo long as he had breath, and ſhut himſelf up in his palace, which is very ſtrong and handſome, and eaſy to be defended, provided it be well ſtored with proviſions. The pope ſent off letters by meſſengers, before the marſhal entered Avignon, to the king of Arragon, humbly entreating him to come and ſuccour him in his diſtreſs, and to ſend him men at arms ſufficient to oppoſe the marſhal of France. He added, that if he could be extricated from the ſituation in which he was, and conveyed to Arragon, he would eſtabliſh the holy ſee at Perpignan or at Barcelona.

The king of Arragon carefully peruſed theſe letters, but paid little attention to their contents. He ſaid to thoſe near his perſon,—'What! does this prieſt ſuppoſe that I am to involve myſelf in a war with the king of France, to ſupport his quarrel? I ſhould indeed be very blame-worthy, were I to interfere.' 'Sire,' replied his knights, 'what

'what you ſay is true: you have no buſineſs to meddle with ſuch matters, for you muſt know that the king of France has been ably adviſed, and has juſt cauſe to act as he does. Leave the clergy to themſelves; and, if they wiſh for ſupport, they muſt ſubject themſelves to thoſe lords from whoſe countries they receive the amount of their benefices. They have too long held them undiſturbed, and they ought to feel and be ſenſible whence their wealth ariſes. The king of France has beſide written to entreat that you would agree with him in a neutrality between the two popes. Accept his invitation, for the queen, who is his couſin-german, has done ſo; and the greater part of the kingdom and clergy are willing to do the ſame; for we hold, eſpecially the Catalonians, that this opinion is the ſureſt: otherwiſe, ſhould the Chriſtian princes not unite in the ſame, there will never be any union in the church, from the diviſions of theſe two popes.'

Thus did the king of Arragon and his lords converſe on the ſubject, while poor Benedict, ſhut up in his palace, was looking in vain for aſſiſtance being ſent him from Arragon. The marſhal of France was in Avignon, and the palace ſo ſtrictly inveſted nothing could enter it, which forced thoſe within to live on the proviſions they had. Of food, there was a ſufficiency for two or three years; but, as there was a ſcarcity of fuel to dreſs their victuals, they began to be alarmed at the conſequences.

The

The king of France held a weekly correſpondence with the lord Boucicaut on the ſtate of Benedict; and the king ordered him not to depart until he had completed the buſineſs with the pope. He therefore increaſed the guard round the palace, to prevent him iſſuing forth. The concluſion was, that Benedict, finding himſelf thus conſtrained, that there was no fuel, and that their proviſions were daily decreaſing, without any aſſiſtance coming to his aid, begged for mercy, through the mediation of ſome of his cardinals. The terms of the treaty were, that he was not to leave the palace of Avignon until union ſhould be reſtored to the church; that he ſhould be put under the guard of proper perſons, and that the cardinals and richeſt citizens of Avignon ſhould be reſponſible for his appearance, dead or alive. This ſatisfied the marſhal. Thoſe cardinals who had benefices in France exerted themſelves much to conclude this treaty, declaring unanimouſly they would comply with the orders of the king of France. Thus ended this buſineſs, and the men at arms marched away from Avignon, every one to his own home.

CHAP. XII.

THE MARSHAL BOUCICAUT RETURNS TO HUNGARY AGAINST THE TURKS.—THE EARL OF DERBY SENDS TO REQUEST PERMISSION OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER TO ACCOMPANY BOUCICAUT IN THIS EXPEDITION.—THE KING OF ENGLAND IS SOLICITED BY THE KING OF FRANCE TO ENGAGE HIS SUBJECTS TO A NEUTRALITY BETWEEN THE TWO POPES, UNTIL A NEW ELECTION SHALL TAKE PLACE; BUT THEY REFUSE COMPLIANCE WITH THEIR MONARCH'S REQUEST.

AFTER this exploit, the marſhal Boucicaut returned to Paris, and ſhortly after made preparations to go to Hungary; for the king had written to the king of France, to his uncles, and to the knights and ſquires of France, that Bajazet was aſſembling a large army of Turks, Arabians, Perſians, Tartars, Syrians, and others of his religion. The king of Hungary was in conſequence deſirous of collecting a numerous force to oppoſe him, and offer him battle with more advantage than the laſt.

The earl of Derby, who reſided at Paris at the hôtel de Cliſſon, near the Temple, was very deſirous to go on the expedition to Hungary, to avoid putting the king of France to further expenſe; for he received from the French treaſury, every

every week, five hundred golden crowns for his expenſes, which his people were moſt punctually paid. On the firſt mention of this expedition, the earl of Derby eagerly liſtened to it; for he felt himſelf under great obligations to the king of France, and was unwilling to be a charge on him longer. He likewiſe thought that he ſhould gain honour by going to Hungary, and that it would make the time of his baniſhment the ſooner paſs away. He conſulted his confidential ſervants, who adviſed him to undertake it, but firſt to ſolicit the conſent of his father the duke of Lancaſter. The earl, in conſequence, ſent to England the knight neareſt his perſon, to learn the pleaſure of his father, and how he would adviſe him to act. When the knight, whoſe name was Dinorth*, arrived at London, he heard the duke of Lancaſter was at his caſtle of Hertford, about twenty miles from London, whither he went, and related to him the earl of Derby's wiſh to join the expedition to Hungary. When the duke had heard all he had to ſay, he was well contented with the ſtate of his ſon, and bade him welcome, adding, that what he had ſaid, and the letters he had brought, demanded conſideration. You will reſt yourſelf here while we deliberate on the ſubject; and, in the mean time, you muſt ſee my ſon's children, to give them news of their father, and carry intelligence of them to him, for that he will expect

* Dinorth. The MSS. have Du Roch. Q. if not Dymocke.

from you.' 'My lord,' replied the knight, 'what you ſay is true.' Thus did he, by deſire of the duke, ſtay ſome little time in England.

The king of France ſent ambaſſadors to Germany to inform the emperor that he had laid hands on Benedict, who for a time had ſtiled himſelf pope. Theſe ambaſſadors were the patriarch of Jeruſalem, ſir Charles de Hangiers, and others of his knights: they ſet out for Germany, and met the emperor at Straſbourg, to whom they ſatisfactorily delivered their meſſage.

The emperor and his council ſaid they would deliberate on the matter, but would gladly firſt know the determination of the king of England, for which the king of France had taken on himſelf to anſwer. Upon this, the embaſſy returned to France, and reported what you have juſt read. The king of France, to haſten the buſineſs, ſent a grand embaſſy to England to remonſtrate with the king on the preſent diſtracted ſtate of the church. The king of England would willingly have joined the king of France, but he had not his prelates nor his churchmen and ſubjects as much under his command as his father-in-law kept them in France. All this he told in confidence to the French ambaſſadors, at the ſame time promiſing them to do his utmoſt to comply with the king of France's requeſt.

The French ambaſſadors returned to Paris; and king Richard, in conſequence of his wiſhes to pleaſe his father-in-law, ſummoned a meeting of the prelates and clergy of his realm, at his palace

lace of Weſtminſter, which is out of the city of London. When they met, he eloquently harangued them on the miſerable ſchiſm in the church, and the plan the king of France had adopted, of remaining neuter between the two rival popes, according to the advice of the univerſity of Paris, and other learned clerks. The kings of Scotland, Caſtille, Arragon and Navarre had followed this example, and all Germany, Bohemia and Italy intended doing the ſame. He therefore entreated that his kingdom would adopt the like meaſures.

When the prelates, who were ignorant why they had been aſſembled, heard this ſpeech, they were greatly aſtoniſhed, and were ſilent. Several murmured and ſaid,—'Our king is quite a Frenchman: his only wiſh is to diſgrace and ruin us, but he ſhall not ſucceed. What! does he want to make us change our creed? He may go ſo far that evil will befal him. We will do nothing in this matter, ſince the king of France propoſes it. Let him keep to his neutrality, if he pleaſe, and we will keep our creed. We will never ſuffer any attempt to deprive us of it, unleſs better reaſons can be ſhewn than thoſe we have juſt heard.'

The king, ſeeing them thus murmur together, made the biſhop of London, who had laid the propoſals of neutrality before them, aſk what determination were beſt to be taken. They replied, one by one, that the matter was ſo weighty, great

deliberation was requiſite before any anſwer could be made.

Upon this, the meeting broke up, and the clergy who had been aſſembled retired to their inns in the city of London. The citizens, learning from them the cauſe of the meeting, aad the propoſition that the king had made them, were greatly angered againſt him, for in England the belief in the pope of Rome was general. They ſaid,—'This Richard of Bordeaux will ruin every thing, if he be ſuffered to go on. His head is ſo thoroughly French, he cannot diſguiſe it; but a day may come when he ſhall pay for all without having time to repent, and ſo ſhall thoſe who have been his adviſers.'

Things continued in this ſtate; and all his ſolicitations and remonſtrances with his clergy to remain neuter obtained not any attention. The king of France and his council were diſſatisfied that king Richard had not inſtantly determined his country to be neuter, but in truth he could not prevail with his clergy to do ſo; and ſhortly after there fell out ſuch horrible events that the like are not to be found in this whole hiſtory, nor in that of any other Chriſtian king, except that noble prince Luſignan, king of Cyprus and Jeruſalem, whom his brother and the Cypriots villanouſly murdered.

CHAP. XIII.

THE ANSWER THE DUKE OF LANCASTER GIVES THE KNIGHT WHO HAD BEEN SENT TO HIM BY THE EARL OF DERBY, TO REQUEST HIS PERMISSION TO JOIN THE EXPEDITION AGAINST THE TURKS.—THE DEATH OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.

WHEN the chevalier Dinorth, who had been ſent by the earl of Derby to the duke of Lancaſter, had received anſwers to the letters he had brought, and had viſited all the caſtles of the earl his lord, and waited on his four ſons and two daughters, who had remained in England, he took leave and returned to France.

The anſwer from the duke of Lancaſter was, that he would not adviſe his ſon to go into Hungary, but, when tired of France, to viſit Caſtille and Portugal, and amuſe himſelf at the courts of his brothers-in-law and ſiſters. The earl of Derby read theſe letters twice over, and muſed ſome time on their contents. His knight told him in confidence that the duke of Lancaſter's phyſicians and ſurgeons had aſſured him the duke laboured under ſo dangerous a diſeaſe it muſt ſoon cauſe his death.

This information made the earl give over all thoughts of travelling further. He remained in

Paris, at the hôtel de Cliffon, which had been prepared for him and his attendants. He frequently vifited the king the duke, of Orleans and their uncles, who entertained him handfomely. The earl was fo fenfible of their attentions that he faid to the king of France,—'My lord, you pay me fo much honour and courtefy, and give me proofs of fuch affection, that I know not how I fhall be ever able to make you any return; but, if it pleafe God that I go back to England, I will not forget them in my attachment to our queen, your daughter, whom God preferve!' 'Many thanks, fair couſin,' replied the king.

It happened, that about Chriſtmas-tide, duke John of Lancaſter fell dangerouſly ill of a diſorder which ended his life, to the great grief of all his friends. He had been ſome time very low ſpirited, on account of the baniſhment of his ſon, whom his nephew king Richard had forced out of England for a trifling cauſe, and alſo for the manner in which the kingdom was governed, which, if perſevered in, he foreſaw muſt be its ruin. The king of England, as it ſeemed, was little affected by his uncle's death, and he was ſoon forgotten.

Many of the nobles, but not all, were uneaſy the kingdom was ſo weakened by the deaths of the dukes of Lancaſter, Gloceſter, and the earl of Arundel, and that the earl of Derby was baniſhed, who ought to be now duke of Lancaſter by legal ſucceſſion. Some ſaid,—'We ſhall ſee what the king will do. It is time that he recal his

his couſin the earl of Derby, and remit his further puniſhment, though there was ſcarcely any juſtice in it. It is proper that he return to take poſſeſſion of his lands, and do homage as duke of Lancaſter.' Such ſpeeches were common throughout England, but eſpecially in London, where the earl of Derby was a hundred times more beloved than king Richard.

Notwithſtanding theſe murmurs, and that he was ſpoken to on the ſubject, as well as his miniſters, nothing was done: on the contrary, the king ſhewed he was more irritated againſt the earl. In this he was very badly adviſed; for if, on the death of his uncle, he had ſent for the earl of Derby, and ſaid to him,—'Fair couſin, you are welcome. You are now duke of Lancaſter, and, after us, the greateſt perſonage in the realm: we will, therefore, that you remain with us; and we will be governed by your counſels, and do nothing without your approbation;'—he would then have continued king of England, and avoided the unfortunate end that was awaiting him: the cataſtrophe was now ſo near at hand that he could no way avoid it, as you ſhall ſpeedily hear.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

THE KING OF ENGLAND MAKES THE KING OF FRANCE ACQUAINTED WITH THE DEATH OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER, BUT DOES NOT NOTICE IT TO THE EARL OF DERBY, THOUGH SON TO THE LATE DUKE.

THE news of the death of the duke of Lancaſter was ſoon public in France. King Richard wrote an account of it to the king with a ſort of joy, but did not notice it to his couſin the earl of Derby. The earl, however, knew it as ſoon, if not ſooner than the king of France, from his people in England. He clothed himſelf and his attendants in deep mourning, as was right, and had his obſequies grandly performed; at which were preſent, the king of France, the duke of Orleans, their three uncles, and numbers of the prelates and great barons of France, for the earl was much liked by all.

The French barons viſited him often, and ſome were diſpleaſed at and took part in his misfortunes: he was an amiable knight, courteous and pleaſant to every one, and it was currently ſaid, the king of England was very ill adviſed not to recal him. To ſay the truth, if the king had wiſely conſidered conſequences, he would have done it: affairs would not have turned out ſo miſerably as they did. The earl of Derby was now, by the death of

of his father, duke of Lancaſter, and the moſt potent baron in England, ſecond to none but the king, and by his advice the king ſhould have governed.

The king and his miniſters ſhould not have forgotten that the people of England, more particularly the Londoners, had frequently riſen againſt the government; that the king was not popular with any rank of men; and that, during the life of the duke of Gloceſter, he had ſuffered many vexations, and even perſonal danger. When the citizens of London and the deputies from the great towns waited on the king at Eltham, to petition for the abolition of the war-taxes, their plan was (by the ſecret advice of the duke of Gloceſter and other lords) to ſeize the king and queen, and chooſe another in his room. King Richard and his queen were to be confined and allowed a ſufficiency for their maintenance during their lives.

The duke of Gloceſter had requeſted his nephew, ſon to the daughter of the duke of Clarence, called John earl of March, to take charge of the government of England; but he had excuſed himſelf from ſo doing, and the meeting was diſmiſſed in tolerably good humour by the prudence and temper of the duke of Lancaſter, and Richard reigned with greater proſperity than before. The king was not unacquainted with theſe deſigns againſt him; and by the wicked counſel of thoſe about his perſon, who gave him to underſtand the duke of Gloceſter was at the bottom of this plot, under pretence of great affection he had him arreſted in

the

the night, and carried over to Calais, where he was ſtrangled. This cauſed a great noiſe in all parts of England, and propoſals were made for dethroning the king; but the duke of Lancaſter, with his uſual prudence and wiſdom, although the duke of Gloceſter was his brother, and he was ſorely afflicted by his death, conſidering he could not reſtore him to life and the conſequences that might enſue, again appeaſed theſe diſcontents; and his nephew, king Richard, was more feared than ever.

The king ought to have remembered all theſe circumſtances, and likewiſe that the earl of Derby was the moſt popular man in England with every deſcription of men, and ſhould therefore inſtantly, on the death of his father, have recalled him. But the king had no ſuch inclination: on the contrary, he immediately ſent his officers to take poſſeſſion of his lands and ſeize their rents, declaring, that, during his baniſhment, neither the earl nor his family ſhould receive any of his revenues in England. He alſo, to the great vexation of ſuch as were attached to the earl or his children, diſpoſed of ſeveral eſtates in the duchy of Lancaſter to ſome of his knights, and to whoever aſked for them. The Engliſh barons greatly blamed him for this, and ſaid,—'It is clear the king of England bears no good will to his couſin, the earl of Derby, when he refuſes to recal him, and ſuffer him to take poſſeſſion of his inheritance. He would, with his children, be a grand ſupport to the crown, and a ſtaff to lean on, but he acts quite contrary, by thus keeping him out of the kingdom,

kingdom, in a diſagreeable ſtate, and which he would make worſe if he could. He has taken poſſeſſion of his lands, and ſent hither his officers, as if they were legally his own, who treat the tenants worſe than any in England: ſhould they complain, during the abſence of their lord, they are not attended to. It is no ſign of affection or juſtice towards the earl of Derby and his children, when he thus ſeizes the inheritance of Lancaſter, that deſcends to them as the true heirs of the lady Blanche, daughter of Henry duke of Lancaſter, and likewiſe that from their mother, the daughter of the earl of Hereford and Northampton, and conſtable of England, which he is daily diſtributing piece-meal to any perſon according to his pleaſure. This conduct is contrary to reaſon and juſtice, and ſo greatly diſliked by the good people of England, that things cannot longer remain in their preſent ſtate.'

Such converſations were general among the nobles, prelates, and commonalty of England. In like manner, the lords in France, who heard of this matter, and were acquainted with the earl of Derby, wondered at it, and ſaid,—'According to our opinion, this king of England has formed too great a hatred againſt the earl of Derby, who is his couſin-german. He is a graceful and courteous knight to all who addreſs him. Either the king of England knows ſome things of him that we do not, or he is miſerably adviſed: it is ſurpriſing the king of France, his brother the duke of Orleans, and their uncles of Berry, Burgundy, and Bourbon,

Bourbon, do not interfere in the buſineſs, for he is daily with ſome of them. They would have greater weight than any others, and the king of England would do more to pleaſe them from love to his queen, who is daughter to the king of France; but, as they have not taken any ſteps in the matter, it behoves us to hold our peace.'

In truth, the king of France and his family were perfectly well diſpoſed toward the earl of Derby, whom they greatly reſpected, and wiſhed always for his company. It was conſidered that he was a widower, likely to marry again, and that the duke of Berry had a daughter, who, though ſo young, was a widow of two huſbands: ſhe had been firſt married to Louis de Blois, who had died in his youth, and then to the lord Philip d'Artois, count d'Eu, who died in Turkey, as you have read in this hiſtory. Mary of Berry was not more than twenty-three years old, and a marriage between her and the earl of Derby was talked of and nearly concluded.

The duke of Berry knew well that the earl of Derby was the greateſt heir apparent in England, as did the king of France, who was anxious this match ſhould take place, on account of his daughter being queen of England. It was natural to imagine that two ſuch ladies, ſo nearly related, would be agreeable company to each other, and that the kingdoms of France and England would enjoy longer peace, and be more intimately connected.

All this would probably have been true, if it could have been accompliſhed, but king Richard

and

and his council broke off all these measures. Whatever misfortunes fate has decreed cannot be prevented; they must have their course; and those that befel king Richard are wonderful indeed to think on. He might indeed have avoided them, but what must be will be.

I, John Froissart, author of these chronicles, will literally say what, in my younger days, I heard at a mansion called Berk-hempstead, distant from London thirty miles, and which, at the time I am speaking of, in the year of our Lord 1361, belonged to the prince of Wales, father to king Richard. As the prince and princess were about to leave England for Aquitaine, to hold their state, the king of England, queen Philippa my mistress, the dukes of Clarence, Lancaster, the lord Edmund, who was afterward earl of Cambridge and duke of York, with their children, came to this mansion to visit the prince and take leave of him. I was at that time twenty-four years old, and one of the clerks of the chamber to my lady the queen. During this visit, as I was seated on a bench, I heard the following conversation from a knight to some of the ladies of the queen. He said,—'There was in that country a book called Brust, which many say contains the prophecies of Merlin. According to its contents, neither the prince of Wales nor duke of Clarence, though sons to king Edward, will wear the crown of England, but it will fall to the house of Lancaster.' When the knight said this, the earl of Derby was not born: his birth was seven years after.

after. This prophecy, however, was verified, for I have ſince ſeen Henry, earl of Derby, king of England.

CHAP. XV.

THE TREATY OF MARRIAGE BETWEEN THE EARL OF DERBY AND THE DAUGHTER OF THE DUKE OF BERRY IS BROKEN OFF BY THE KING OF ENGLAND, THROUGH THE MEANS OF THE EARL OF SALISBURY.

THE moment king Richard learnt that a treaty of marriage was going forward, with the approbation of all parties, between the earl of Derby and the lady Mary of Berry, he became very thoughtful and much diſpleaſed thereat. He ſaid to the earl of Saliſbury, in whom he had great confidence,—'My lord, you muſt make yourſelf ready to go to Paris; I will give you credential letters to the king our father, and to our well-beloved brother and uncles. Tell them to beware of forming any alliance or marriage with ſuch a traitor as the earl of Derby, who would have betrayed his ſovereign: you are perfectly acquainted with the fact: and, with your good underſtanding, act in ſuch wiſe that I ſhall be ſatisfied, and this marriage be put aſide.'

The earl of Saliſbury replied,—'Sire, I ſhall punctually

punctually obey all your commands; but, if this marriage could be broken off by any other means than mine, I ſhall be very thankful to you.' 'Earl of Saliſbury,' anſwered the king, 'make no excuſes; for I will and entreat that you go thither, and whatever may be the conſequences I will ſupport you through them.'

'Well, ſire,' ſaid the earl, 'ſince you ſpecially command me, and the matter ſeems to intereſt you ſo much, I will undertake it, but I go very unwillingly.' 'Haſten your preparation as much as you can,' replied the king, 'that the treaty of marriage be not too far advanced.'

The earl of Saliſbury was ſoon ready, and, having had his credential letters ſealed, he departed from the king, who at the time reſided with his queen at Leeds-caſtle. He carried with him private letters from the queen, to the king and queen of France, and to her brother the duke of Orleans, and, haſtening his journey, arrived at Dover, where, the wind being favourable, he embarked, and landed at Calais. He was received by the king's half-brother, the earl of Huntingdon, governor of Calais, to whom he told part of his buſineſs. He made no long ſtay at Calais, but continued his road through Amiens to Paris, and wherever he paſſed he was well entertained. On his arrival at Paris, he lodged at the White Horſe, in the ſquare of the Greve *. After he had dreſſed him-

* The MSS. ſay, 'at the château de Feſtus, in the rue du Tiroir.'

ſelf, he waited on the king and queen, and delivered his credential letters: when the king of France had peruſed them, he took the earl of Saliſbury aſide and demanded his buſineſs. The earl related to him very minutely every thing he had been charged with by the king of England, and called the earl of Derby a traitor to his natural lord. The king, on hearing this expreſſion, was angered (for he had taken ſo ſtrong a liking to the earl of Derby that he would not hear any thing ſaid in his diſpraiſe), and gave back the letters to the earl, ſaying,—'Earl of Saliſbury, we readily believe what you tell us; but our ſon of England bears too great a hatred to our couſin of Derby, and we wonder he has continued it ſo long, for we think that his court would be better adorned if he were near his perſon, and thoſe who have the moſt weight in his council ought to adviſe him to recal his couſin.' 'Very dear ſire,' replied the earl of Saliſbury, 'I only act as I have been ordered.' 'That is true,' ſaid the king: 'we are not angry with you, for perchance our ſon may know of theſe matters more than we can: execute the commiſſion you have been charged with.' The earl then waited on the duke of Berry, and delivered his meſſage from king Richard. The duke made no anſwer, but went to the king at the hôtel de Saint Pol, and aſked if he had received any news from England. The king told him all that had paſſed between him and the earl of Saliſbury, and a privy council of the king's uncles and principal lords was ſummoned on the occaſion.

They

They ſaid,—'The king of England muſt fear very much the earl of Derby, from circumſtances that we are ignorant of, and that have not been made public. We ought to be more attached to him than to the earl of Derby, from his connection with us by marriage; and, as we have been informed he will be greatly diſpleaſed if we proceed in the marriage of the earl of Derby with the counteſs d'Eu, we muſt break it off. We have only to conceal what we have heard from England until the earl of Saliſbury be returned.'

The king and his council adopted this reſolution. When the earl of Saliſbury had completed the buſineſs he had been ſent on to Paris, he took leave of the king and his lords, and departed. The king, however, ſhewed he was more diſpleaſed than otherwiſe at the intelligence he had brought, and returned to the earl his credential letters, refuſing to accept of them, from his partiality to the earl of Derby. This laſt knew of the earl of Saliſbury being at Paris, but they never ſaw each other; and the earl of Saliſbury returned to Calais without ſpeaking to the earl of Derby, and thence to England to report the ſucceſs of his miſſion.

The earl of Derby was much diſpleaſed that the earl of Saliſbury ſhould leave Paris without ſeeing him, and augured from it nothing favourable.

His council were of the ſame opinion, and ſaid to him,—'My lord, you will ſoon perceive ſuch things as you little dream of, although they are as

yet hid from you. The French are a close and subtle people: perhaps the king of England and his minions are vexed that the king of France and his court shew you such honour and affection; perhaps also it may be rumoured in England that you propose marrying the lady Marry of Berry, and king Richard, to whom this intelligence will not be agreeable, has sent over to have it broken off: should that be the case, you will speedily hear of it.'

Thus, as the knights and council of the earl of Derby had supposed matters were, did they turn out. About a month after the departure of the earl of Salisbury, the commissioners from the earl of Derby renewed the matter of the marriage with the lady Mary of Berry: but those on the part of the duke replied,—'Tell my lord of Derby, that when he is in the presence of the king and his brother the duke of Orleans, he may propose this business himself; for we cannot say more on the subject, since it is not agreeable to our employers that we longer interfere in it.'

These words were repeated to the earl of Derby, who suspected nothing more was meant by it than to hasten the marriage; for the king of France and his lords had shewn outwardly as much eagerness for the match as ever. He remembered what had been told him, and at a proper opportunity, when the king and his lords were together, renewed his proposal of marriage. The duke of Burgundy, having been charged with the answer, replied, 'Cousin of Derby, we cannot think of marrying

our

our couſin to a traitor.' The earl inſtantly changed colour on hearing this expreſſion, and ſaid,—'Sir, I am in the preſence of my lord the king, and muſt interrupt your ſpeech, to anſwer the expreſſion you have uſed. I never was nor ever thought of being a traitor; and if any one dare to charge me with treaſon, I am ready to anſwer him now, or at whatever time it may pleaſe the king to appoint.' 'No, couſin,' ſaid the king, 'I do not believe you will find any man in France that will challenge your honour. The expreſſion my uncle has uſed comes from England.'

The earl of Derby caſt himſelf on his knees, and replied, 'My lord, I willingly believe you: may God preſerve all my friends, and confound mine enemies!' The king made the earl riſe, and ſaid—'Earl, be appeaſed: all this matter will end well; and when you ſhall be on good terms with every one, we can then talk of marriage. But it will be firſt neceſſary that you have poſſeſſion of your duchy of Lancaſter; for it is the cuſtom of France, and of many countries on this ſide the ſea, that when a lord marries with the conſent of his lord paramount, ſhould he have one, he ſettles a dower on his wife.' Upon this, wine and ſpices were brought: the converſation ended; and, when the king retired to his cloſet, every one went away.

The earl of Derby, on his return to the hôtel de Cliſſon, was bitterly enraged, and not without reaſon, to be accuſed of treaſon, when he thought himſelf one of the moſt loyal knights in the uni-

verſe, and in the preſence too of the king of France, who had ſhewn him ſo much affection and courteſy, and that this accuſation ſhould have been brought from England by the earl of Saliſbury. His knights pacified him as well as they could, by ſaying,—'My lord, whoever wiſhes to live in this world muſt ſometimes ſuffer trouble. Comfort yourſelf for the preſent, and bear all things with patience: perhaps you will hereafter have it made up in joy and glory. Of all the lords on this ſide of the ſea, the king of France loves you the moſt, and, from what we hear and ſee, he will inſtantly prevent any inſult being offered you. You ſhould be thankful to him and his uncles for having kept this matter ſecret during the ſtay of the earl of Saliſbury, and until he was landed in England.'

'Indeed!' replied the earl: 'I ſhould have thought it more loyal to have made the charge while he was here, than to have waited ſo long. I could then have been enabled ſufficiently to exculpate myſelf in the preſence of the king and his lords, ſo that my innocency would have been apparent, but I muſt now ſubmit to the diſgrace until I ſhall wipe it off.'

'My lord,' anſwered his knights, 'all faults cannot be corrected at once: have patience, we hope things will turn out better in England than you think. The affection the whole country bear you will very ſoon, if it pleaſe God, deliver you from all dangers.' Thus did his knights attempt to comfort the earl of Derby, who was more caſt

down

down than man ever was; and what they had uttered by chance, for consolation, turned out true, as I shall now relate.

It was known in England that the earl of Salisbury had been sent to France with credential letters, and that, on the strength of them, he had accused the earl of Derby to the king of France and his uncles, as a perjured, false and wicked traitor, which words had greatly angered many of the prelates and barons of the kingdom. They said, when among themselves; 'The earl of Salisbury has done very wrong to carry such a message to France, and make so heavy a charge against the most honourable man in the world. The day will come when he shall repent of this, and say, 'It weighs heavily on me that I ever carried a message to France against the earl of Derby.'

The Londoners were exceedingly enraged against the king and his ministers for their conduct, and said,—'Ah, gallant and courteous earl of Derby, how great are the jealousies and hatreds against thee when, to overwhelm thee with disgrace and vexation, they charge thee with treason! It was not enough for the king and his minions to force thee out of the kingdom, but they must add this charge also; but, by God, all things have an end, and their turn may come.' 'Alas!' cried the people, 'what have his children done? when the king seizes their inheritance, which ought to be theirs by direct succession from grandfather and father. There must be some change in public measures, for we neither can nor will suffer them to go on longer.'

CHAP. XVI.

KING RICHARD OF ENGLAND PROCLAIMS A TOURNAMENT, WHICH IS ATTENDED BY VERY FEW PERSONS.—ON SETTING OUT FOR IRELAND, HE BANISHES THE EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND AND HIS SON THE KINGDOM.

SOON after the return of the earl of Saliſbury from France to England, king Richard had proclaimed throughout his realm and in Scotland, that a grand tournament would be held at Windſor, by forty knights and forty ſquires, clothed in green, with the device of a white falcon, againſt all comers, and that the queen of England, well attended by ladies and damſels, would be at this feaſt.

The queen was indeed preſent at the tournament in magnificent array, but very few of the barons attended: the greater part of the knights and ſquires of England were diſguſted with the king, for the baniſhment of the earl of Derby, the injuries he was doing the earl's children, the murder of the duke of Gloceſter, that had been committed in the caſtle of Calais, the death of the earl of Arundel, whom he had beheaded in London, and the perpetual exile of the earl of Warwick. None of the kindred of theſe lords came to the feaſt, which was of courſe very poorly attended.

The king, after this tournament, made preparations to go to Ireland. He left his queen, Iſabella,

bella, and her houſehold at Windſor-caſtle, and took the road to Briſtol, where he laid in ample purveyances and ſtores. He had with him full two thouſand lances, knights and ſquires, and ten thouſand archers.

When the Londoners heard he was ſet out, they began to murmur together and ſay,—'Well! Richard of Bordeaux has taken the road to Briſtol for Ireland. It will be his deſtruction: never will he return thence to joy, more than his anceſtor, king Edward, who governed his realm ſo fooliſhly, through the counſels of the Deſpencers, and paid for it. This Richard of Bordeaux has confided ſo long in weak and wicked counſellors, that it cannot longer be borne.'

You muſt know, that although many barons, knights and ſquires accompanied the king in his expedition to Ireland, they were much diſcontented with him, and did not follow him with a good will. When they were together, they converſed, ſaying, 'Our king governs very badly, and too readily believes weak counſel.' This was ſo often and ſo loudly ſpoken of throughout the realm, particularly by the earl of Northumberland and his ſon Harry Percy, that the king's miniſters heard of it, and ſaid to the king; 'Sire, the earl of Northumberland and his ſon ſay things that muſt not be ſuffered, for they want to excite your ſubjects to riſe againſt you. Every rebel muſt be puniſhed, one after another, that the greateſt barons may fear you, and take example.'

'That is true,' replied the king: 'how ſhall

I act

I act on this occaſion?' 'We will tell you, ſire: they are to join this expedition, but not yet arrived. When they come, order them to your preſence by the earl of Saliſbury or any other you pleaſe, and then remonſtrate with them on the injurious ſpeeches they have uttered againſt you and your miniſters. You will hear what anſwer they make, and, as that may be, conſider how you ſhall puniſh them, by impriſonment or otherwiſe.' The king replied,—'You ſay well, and what you adviſe ſhall be done.'

The earl of Northumberland and his ſon had good friends on this expedition, by whom great part of the ſecret councils of the king were revealed: they were ſtrongly adviſed not to join the armament, nor appear in the king's preſence, for that he was ſo wrath with them, they would at leaſt be ſeverely reprimanded, if not impriſoned. On hearing this, they retarded their journey towards Briſtol; for, according to the intelligence ſent them, had they come, they would have run a riſk of their lives.

The king's miniſters, perceiving the earl of Northumberland did not arrive, ſaid to him,—'See, ſire, if we did not tell you the truth: neither the earl of Northumberland nor his ſon condeſcend to ſerve you, although ordered; and, if you ſend them a ſpecial ſummons, you will have a confirmation that what we have told you is true.' The king ſaid, it ſhould be done. Letters were ſigned, ſealed and ſent off by a ſpecial meſſenger, containing orders for the earl of Northumberland

and

and ſir Henry Percy inſtantly to join the king's forces, and perform their duties as they were bounden to do.

The meſſenger continued his journey to a very handſome caſtle of the earl of Northumberland on the borders of Scotland, and delivered his letters. The earl read them attentively, and then gave them to his ſon.

They determined to entertain the meſſenger well, and to write to the king to excuſe themſelves, as they were no way prepared, nor could they leave their own country, and as the king had a ſufficiency of men for the buſineſs he was going upon.

The meſſenger returned with his anſwers, and gave them the king; but they were not agreeable to him nor to his miniſters, and for this and other charges, which were publicly made againſt the earl of Northumberland and his ſon, they were baniſhed England, never to return until recalled by the king. This ſentence was publiſhed in London and in all the towns of England, to the great aſtoniſhment of the citizens, who could not conceive why they had thus been ſo ſeverely puniſhed; for they had always conſidered the earl of Northumberland and ſir Henry Percy as two of the moſt loyal ſubjects in the realm. Some ſaid, when converſing on this matter, that 'the miniſters of the king hated them, and would in the end cauſe their maſter's deſtruction. It may be that the earl and his ſon have talked too freely about the king's miniſters, and his fooliſh government;

ment; and, as truth is not always agreeable, theſe gallant knights ſuffer for it; but thoſe who have now judged them may hereafter have their turn.'

Such were the converſations of the diſcontented Londoners, as well as of the majority of the Engliſh people. The earl and his ſon were connected by blood with the nobleſt and richeſt families, who were exaſperated by their baniſhment; and among them his brother, ſir Thomas Percy, who had done many very great ſervices to the crown of England. When the earl heard of his baniſhment, he ſummoned all his friends and relations; but many were with the king and could not attend. On their aſſembling, he conſulted them how he ſhould act in the diſgrace the king had ſo undeſervedly heaped on him; and it was determined to ſend to Scotland, to requeſt the king would afford the earl his ſon an aſylum in that country until affairs ſhould mend, or the king's anger be pacified.

This reſolution was adopted, and a meſſenger ſent to the king of Scotland to make the above requeſt. King Robert, the earl Archibald of Douglas and the barons of Scotland, cheerfully complied with it, and returned for anſwer, that the kingdom was ready to receive them; and, if they wanted five or ſix hundred lances, they would be inſtantly at their ſervice, on hearing from them. This anſwer was highly pleaſing to the earl of Northumberland and his kindred; and things remained in this ſtate, the earl in his own country among his friends; for king Richard

and

and his adviſers had in a ſhort time ſo much to do, that they had no leiſure to attend to the earl of Northumberland, nor to ſay to him, 'Quit the kingdom, or we will force you.' They were obliged to give up all thoughts but for their own ſafety, as you will hear in the courſe of this hiſtory.

CHAP. XVII.

THE ENGLISH, AND PARTICULARLY THE LONDONERS, RISE IN FAVOUR OF THE EARL OF DERBY AGAINST KING RICHARD.

DURING the time king Richard was holding his court at Briſtol and in that neighbourhood, there was a general inſurrection of the people of England. The courts of juſtice were cloſed; at which many of the prelates, barons and prudent part of the people, who only wanted for peace and to pay what was lawful, were much dejected. A ſtop was put to all traffic, for merchants dare not travel for fear of being robbed, and having no courts to apply to for redreſs. All theſe things were very prejudicial, and contrary to the uſual cuſtoms of the country; for in general all people, labourers and tradeſmen, lived peaceably, and followed their occupations without hindrance, but it was now quite the contrary.

When merchants went with their goods from one town to another, and had any money in their purſes,

purſes, it was taken from them. The farmers' houſes were pillaged of grain, and their beeves, pigs and ſheep carried away, without the owners daring to ſay a word. Theſe enormities increaſed ſo much, there was nothing but complaints heard. The common people ſaid; 'Times are ſadly changed for the worſe ſince the days of king Edward of happy memory. Juſtice was then rigorous in puniſhing the wicked. Then there was no man in England daring enough to take a fowl or ſheep without paying for them, but now they carry off all things, and we muſt not ſpeak. This cannot go on without the country being ruined, and yet no one attempts to check it. We have a good-for-nothing king, who only attends to his idle pleaſures; and, as it ſhould ſeem, he cares not how public affairs are managed, ſo that his inclinations are gratified. We muſt look for a remedy, or our enemies and ill-wiſhers will be rejoiced and laugh at us. King Richard has made his brother, the earl of Huntingdon, governor of Calais, and perchance there may be ſome underhand treaties going forward to ſurrender it to the French, although it be ſo neceſſary and convenient to England: ſhould this happen no nation will be ever more diſcomfited than the Engliſh, and with good reaſon, for they will loſe the keys of the entrance to France.'

Theſe murmurings and diſcontents multiplied; and the prelates and rich barons came to live in London, that they might avoid the troubles and dangers which were increaſing throughout the kingdom.

kingdom. The families of thoſe whom the king had put to death or baniſhed were rejoiced, and looked out for greater miſchiefs as the conſequence.

The citizens of London, who being rich from their trade, are enabled to live in ſtate, and by whom the other parts of England are generally governed, foreſaw that moſt dangerous conſequences would enſue, unleſs they ſtepped forward, as they had wiſely done formerly againſt king Edward and the Deſpencers, who had forced queen Iſabella and the prince of Wales out of the kingdom, and wanted to deſtroy them. The king had no cauſe for ſo doing, but they were abſent from England three years. When the Londoners perceived king Edward ſo beſotted with the Deſpencers, they provided a remedy, by ſending ſecretly to queen Iſabella information, that if ſhe could collect a body of three hundred armed men, and land with them in England, ſhe would find the citizens of London, and the majority of the nobles and commonalty, ready to join her, and place her on the throne.

The queen found a friend in ſir John of Hainault, lord of Beaumont and Chimay, and brother to count William of Hainault, who undertook, through affection and pity, to carry her and her ſon back to England. He exerted himſelf ſo much in her ſervice, with knights and ſquires, that he collected a body of four hundred, and landed them in England, to the great comfort of the Londoners.

The citizens joined them, for, without their aſſiſtance,

assistance, they would never have accomplished their enterprise. King Edward was made prisoner at Bristol, and carried to Berkeley-castle, where he died. His advisers were all put to death with much cruelty; and that same day king Edward III. was crowned king of England, in the palace of Westminster.

The Londoners remembered all these circumstances very well; for the children of those days, now become men, had often had them told by their fathers, and others read them in the chronicles of those times. They therefore said to one another privately,—'Our ancestors, in former days, provided a remedy for the mischiefs that afflicted the country, which were not so alarming as at this moment: if this wicked king Richard be suffered to rule according to his pleasure, we must all be ruined, and the country destroyed. Ever since he began his reign, the kingdom has not prospered to the degree in which it did before: he shews no signs of being the son of the prince of Wales; for, if he were his son, he would follow his manners, and take pleasure in imitating his prowess, instead of idly dallying with ladies, and spending his time among them, or putting his confidence in those who have neither weight nor sense but in amassing treasures and destroying England. Have not the traitors near his person infamously murdered that valiant duke of Gloucester, because he saw clearly public affairs were badly governed, going on from bad to worse, and spoke boldly the truth concerning them? Have they not also put to death that gallant knight the

earl

earl of Arundel, and baniſhed England, without reaſon, the gentle ſir Henry of Lancaſter, earl of Derby, by whom, and his four promiſing ſons, the kingdom ought to be ſupported? This cruel conduct is much aggravated; for, while they make the earl ſuffer many diſguſts beyond ſea, they have diſinherited his children of the eſtates that devolved to them from their grandmother, the lady Blanche of Lancaſter, by dividing and diſtributing them daily to thoſe who are unworthy to poſſeſs them. Becauſe thoſe two gallant knights, the earl of Northumberland and ſir Henry Percy, have ſpoken their minds on this ſubject, king Richard has alſo baniſhed them: it is clear there will not ſoon be any men of courage and honeſty in the country, and hatreds and diſcontents are now increaſing every where, ſo that if a remedy be not ſought for, all things will fall to ruin. The remedy is in the earl of Derby, who is now loſing his time in France: him we muſt ſend for, and, on his arrival, appoint him regent of the kingdom, that he may reform all abuſes, and puniſh thoſe who have uſed him ſo ill. Richard of Bordeaux muſt be arreſted and confined in the Tower of London, when all his actions will be examined and put into writing, which are ſufficiently numerous, and will prove clearly he is unworthy to govern a kingdom or wear a crown: his acts are ſo infamous, that they will condemn him.'

CHAP. XVIII.

THE ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY IS SENT TO FRANCE BY THE LONDONERS, AND OTHERS OF THEIR PARTY IN ENGLAND TO BRING BACK THE EARL OF DERBY.

SUCH was the language of the Londoners, and of many others throughout England; but, although much was done to excite the people to insurrections, they would never have attempted what they did, if the Londoners had not ſet them the example. The citizens of London, who, from their power and wealth, lead the reſt of England, held ſeveral ſecret councils, to which were admitted ſome prelates and knights, when they reſolved to ſend in ſearch of the earl of Derby, who was reſiding at Paris or thereabout, and bring him back to England. On his return, they were to remonſtrate with him on the weak government of wicked king Richard, and propoſe, if he would undertake it, to give him the crown, and elect him and his heirs kings for ever, on condition that he promiſed to govern according to the ancient uſages of the country.

They next thought on the moſt proper perſon to ſend on this commiſſion: he muſt be prudent and brave; for it would be a grand enterpriſe to ſeduce the earl from France, when the king and his uncles were ſhewing him every token of love

and

and courteſy; and he would not put any belief in the ſimple propoſitions of a low-born perſon, nor in any letters that were ſent him, but rather the contrary. In conſequence, they entreated the archbiſhop of Canterbury *, a man of prudence and wiſdom, to undertake it, who, for the good of his country, complied with the requeſt. He made his preparations for the journey ſo privately, that none knew of his departure but thoſe in the ſecret. He, with ſix more, embarked on board a veſſel on the Thames, and landed at Sluys, thence he went to Ardembourg, Ghent, Oudenarde, Ath, Condé and Valenciennes, and ſtopped at the hôtel of the Swan, in the market-place. Having ſtaid there three days to recover himſelf, he purſued his journey, not as archbiſhop of Canterbury, but like a ſimple monk on a pilgrimage, diſcovering to no one his rank, nor the buſineſs he was about. He departed from Valenciennes the fourth day, having hired a guide to conduct him to Paris, giving out that he was on a pilgrimage to Saint Maur des Foſſés†. He arrived at length where the earl of Derby reſided, which was, I believe, at the hôtel de Vincheſter‡, near to Paris.

When

---

* Thomas Fitz-alan, ſon to the earl of Arundel.

† Saint Maur des Foſſés,—a town in the iſle of France, dioceſe of Paris.

‡ Froiſſart has ſaid before, the earl of Derby reſided at the hôtel de Cliſſon, near the Temple. This hôtel de Vincheſter was ſo called from having been built by John biſhop of Win-

 cheſter

When the earl of Derby firſt ſaw the archbiſhop, his heart rejoiced and he recovered his ſpirits. Thoſe about him were well pleaſed, for they concluded he had brought ſome important intelligence from England. The archbiſhop, however, did not diſcover the cauſe of his coming, and, to prevent any ſuſpicions of it, ſaid he was on a pilgrimage to Saint Maur des Foſſés, which the earl's attendants believed and were ſatisfied.

When the archbiſhop thought it was time to make the object of his journey known, he took the earl into a private chamber, and there informed him of the miſerable ſtate England was in; that violence and deſolation ruled in many parts, and that, by the king's fault, there was neither law nor juſtice: that the Londoners, with ſome prelates and valiant men, had determined to remedy theſe evils, and that for this he had been ſent by them to ſay, that if the earl would return to England (for he was waſting his time in France) they would make him king: Richard of Bordeaux had done, or conſented to ſo many atrocious acts, that the people were indignant, and reſolved to riſe againſt him. 'Now is the time, or never,' added the archbiſhop, 'for you to ſeek your de-

cheſter 1204. It belonged, at the period we are now speaking of, to the duke of Berry.—*Sauval Antiquités de Paris.*

There ſeems a miſtake as to the name of the biſhop of Wincheſter. Peter de Rupibus was biſhop 1204, and died 1238.

This hôtel de Vincheſter is pronounced, by corruption, Bicêtre, and was converted into a bridewell, before the Revolution, for diſorderly women.

liverance,

liverance, and the advantage of yourſelf and children; for, if you do not, no one elſe will for them, ſince this Richard of Bordeaux is giving away all their eſtates to his minions, or to whoever aſks for them. The citizens of London, and many other gallant men, are greatly enraged at ſuch conduct, and would amend it if they could, though hitherto they have been ſilent.

'He has filled up the meaſure of his crimes by the murder of the duke of Gloceſter, the beheading of the earl of Arundel without cauſe, the exile of the earl of Warwick, and your baniſhment; clearly ſhewing his intentions to deprive England of its nobles and the ſupport ſhe might have from them, for he has lately baniſhed the earl of Northumberland and his ſon becauſe they talked too freely of him and his miniſters. The citizens of London and the greater part of the prelates and barons of England entreat you will not ſleep over this buſineſs, but that you will take leave of the king of France and the French, and return home, where you will be joyfully received, and every promiſe I have made be punctually fulfilled, for the country deſire none other than you for their king, ſo much are you beloved and reſpected.'

When the earl of Derby had heard this ſpeech of the archbiſhop, he did not immmediately reply, but, leaning on a window that looked into the gardens, muſed a while, and having various thoughts in his mind, turned to the biſhop, and

ſaid; 'My lord, your ſpeech requires much conſideration. I would be unwilling to begin an enterpriſe and be forced to leave it unfiniſhed, for I well know, that unleſs by the means you propoſe, it will be a long time before I return to England. I am loth to reſort to this, for the king of France and his nobles have paid me every honour and attention, and will continue ſo to do, as long as I ſhall pleaſe to live among them. Should I accept of the offers and kind promiſes which you and my good friends the citizens of London make, I muſt ſubject myſelf to their will, arreſt king Richard, and put him to death. For this I ſhall be univerſally blamed, and I would not willingly do ſo, if any other means could be adopted.'

'My lord,' replied the archbiſhop, 'I am ſent hither with every good diſpoſition towards you. Call in your council, and lay before them the propoſitions I have made: I will alſo explain why I am deputed hither, and I do not think they will adviſe you to act otherwiſe than to accept them.' 'I conſent,' ſaid the earl, 'for ſuch matters demand great conſideration.'

The earl of Derby ſent for thoſe knights and ſquires in whom he had the moſt confidence, and in their preſence deſired the archbiſhop to repeat what he had juſt told him; which being done, he aſked their advice how he ſhould act. They unanimouſly anſwered,—'My lord, God has taken compaſſion on you: be careful how you refuſe ſuch offers, for you will never have more advantage-

ous ones made you. Whoever will examine your blood will find that it deſcends in a ſtraight line from Saint Edward, king of England. Thank your good friends the Londoners for wiſhing to deliver you from exile, and for having pity on your children and the kingdom of England, which now is ſorely troubled. Have you forgotten the many wrongs this Richard of Bordeaux has done you, and who does not diſſemble hiswiſhes to add to them daily. When your marriage with the lady Mary of Berry was on the point of being concluded, did he not ſend over the earl of Saliſbury to break off the match, and to accuſe you before the king and his whole court of being a falſe and wicked traitor? Such things are unpardonable, and you ſhould rather ſeek for means of revenge. If you will not help yourſelf, no one will do it for you: conſider well, therefore, all we have ſaid.'

CHAP. XIX.

THE EARL OF DERBY TAKES LEAVE OF THE KING AND LORDS OF FRANCE, TO VISIT HIS COUSIN THE DUKE OF BRITTANY.

THE earl of Derby's courage was raiſed on hearing his council thus boldly declare their opinion, and he ſaid,—'I will do whatever you adviſe, for I have called you together to have your counſel.' They unanimouſly anſwered, 'You ſay well; and we will adviſe you, according to circumſtances, to the beſt of our power.' After this, they carried on their buſineſs ſo very ſecretly that none of the houſehold but thoſe immediately concerned knew any thing of what was going forward. They conſulted how they could croſs the ſea before any news of their intention ſhould reach England, and whether to travel through Hainault and Holland, and embark at Dordrecht, or to go to Brittany under pretence of viſiting the duke, ſail from one of his ports, and land at Plymouth or any other place whither God might pleaſe to ſend them.

Every thing conſidered, they thought the road through Brittany the eaſieſt accompliſhed; and they adviſed the earl, ſaying,—'My lord, you will take leave of the king of France, his brother and uncles, and thank them warmly for the affection and courteſy they have ſhewn you. After this,

this, you will requeſt the king to grant you an eſcort to Brittany, to viſit the duke and ſtay ſome time with him.'

The earl of Derby conſented, and came to Paris, where all things were prepared for his departure: he waited on the king as uſual whenever he pleaſed, for the doors of the palace were open to him at all hours. At this laſt viſit, he talked to the king very ably, as he knew well how to do, as to his future plans, and ſaid he would go and amuſe himſelf in Brittany and viſit the duke, whom he called his uncle, for he had married a ſiſter to his father, daughter to king Edward. The king, not thinking he was plotting miſchief, eaſily aſſented: and the earl, having requeſted an eſcort to Brittany, the king promiſed to give inſtant orders for one to be at his command. To ſhorten the matter, the earl managed his affairs with much diſcretion, and took leave of all the lords who were then at court: on his departure, he made very handſome preſents to the king's officers, for he was bounden ſo to do; and to the heralds and minſtrels reſident in Paris, and who attended the farewel ſupper he gave at the hôtel de Cliſſon to ſuch of the French knights as choſe to partake of it.

Theſe things done, on the next morning he and his attendants mounted their horſes and left Paris by the gate of St. James, following the road to Eſtampes. A knight from Beauce, called ſir Guy le Baveux, eſcorted them. They continued their

journey

journey to Blois, where they remained eight days; for the earl had ſent forward one of his knights, and a herald, to ſignify to the duke his intention of viſiting him, and the circumſtance of his being on the road.

The duke of Brittany was very happy to learn that his nephew the earl of Derby was coming to ſee him; for he was attached to him, and had always loved the duke of Lancaſter and his other brothers. 'Why,' ſaid the duke to the knight, whoſe name was ſir William de la Perriere, 'has our nephew ſtopped on the road, ſince he intends to viſit us, and has not come directly hither?' The knight excuſed him as well as he could; but the duke ſaid,—'It is fooliſh; for there is no knight whom for theſe laſt ſeven years I ſhould more gladly ſee in Brittany than my fair nephew the earl of Derby. Let him come to us with a hearty welcome, and he ſhall find my country and towns open and ready to receive him.'

The knight was well contented with this anſwer, and ſet out on his return as ſpeedily as poſſible. On his arrival at Blois, he told the earl and his council the words of the duke of Brittany. On the morrow they mounted their horſes, and left Blois, with the good wiſhes of the inhabitants, who had been paid moſt liberally for every thing they had wanted, and all were contented.

In company with the earl of Derby was ſir Peter de Craon, who had been ſo much haraſſed by the parliament of Paris in his ſuit with the queen

of

of Naples, that he was in a manner baniſhed France, and all his caſtles and eſtates ſequeſtered for payment of the one hundred thouſand francs he was indebted to the queen, and various other heavy ſums incidental to the coſts and expences of this ſuit.

The earl of Derby journeyed on until he came to Nantes, where he met the duke of Brittany, who received him and his company with much joy. Sir Guy le Baveux returned to France, and the earl ſtaid with the duke, who entertained him in the beſt manner. The archbiſhop of Canterbury accompanied the earl, but did not open himſelf to any one on the cauſe of his coming, ſo that it was a perfect ſecret excepting to the earl and his council. The duke, to ſhew his love, ſpared no expenſe in entertaining his nephew and his attendants, although he knew king Richard was very wroth againſt him, for which he pitied him.

The earl, noticing the great affection of the duke, by the advice of his council diſcovered ſome parts of his plan, by way of ſounding him on the ſubject. He aſked his advice how to act in reſpect to his inheritances of the duchy of Lancaſter and others which his father had held, and by right of ſucceſſion had at his death devolved on him; but that the king, far from allowing him to have poſſeſſion of them, had baniſhed him from England, and was daily giving away the eſtates of his family to any who aſked for them; that numbers of nobles and prelates were exceedingly diſcontented

with

with the king for this conduct, and that many parts of England were in a ſtate of warfare againſt each other; that the good people of London had compaſſion on him, and had given him to underſtand they would cheerfully receive him, if he would return, and bring about a reconciliation between him and th e king, and recover for him his inheritances.

When the duke of Brittany heard this, he replied;—'Fair nephew, the ſtraighteſt road is always the beſt and ſureſt. You are in a diſtreſſing ſituation, and aſk advice: I therefore recommend you to truſt to the Londoners: they are powerful, and will force king Richard, who, I underſtand, has behaved to you very unjuſtly, to do as they ſhall pleaſe, in conjunction with the prelates and nobles who are attached to you in England. I will aſſiſt you with veſſels, men at arms and croſs-bows, to convey you over the ſea, and to defend you againſt any dangers you may meet with. The earl of Derby was very thankful to the duke of Brittany for this advice and offer.

CHAP. XX.

THE EARL OF DERBY SAILS FROM BRITTANY TO ENGLAND.—HIS RECEPTION BY THE CITIZENS OF LONDON.

THUS were all things ſettled moſt amicably between the duke of Brittany and the earl of Derby, who ſtaid ſome time with the duke, and gave out that he would remain longer; but, in the mean time, his purveyances were preparing at a diſtant ſea-port, which I believe was Vannes, whither the duke and earl came when all things were ready. When the wind was favourable for England, the earl and his attendants embarked on board the veſſel prepared for him. He was to be eſcorted by three ſhips full of men at arms and croſs-bows, as far as the coaſts of England.

The fleet, having weighed anchor, put to ſea, and the farther they advanced towards England, the more favourable was the wind, ſo that, within two days and as many nights, they arrived at Plymouth, where they landed few at a time, and entered the town *. The bailiff of Plymouth, to whom the king had intruſted the guard of the town, was aſtoniſhed to ſee ſo many men at arms and croſs-bows; but the archbiſhop of Canterbury ſatisfied him, by ſaying they were men at arms

* This is a miſtake: he probably coaſted England, and landed at Ravenſpurn in Yorkſhire, between Hull and Bridlington.

whom

whom the duke of Brittany had ſent for the good of the realm, and to ſerve the king and country. The bailiff's ſuſpicions were lulled; and the earl ſo diſguiſed himſelf that he was not diſcovered by any of the townſmen, and retired to a private chamber, where he remained ſhut up. The archbiſhop, on their arrival at Plymouth, inſtantly wrote letters, ſigned and ſealed by him, which he diſpatched by one of his ſervants to London, to inform the citizens of the earl's landing.

The meſſenger made ſuch haſte, by changing horſes in the different towns he paſſed through, that he arrived at London by break of day on the following morning. He entered the city by London bridge gate, which was not ſhut, and went to the houſe of the mayor, who was in bed; but, on hearing a meſſenger was come from the archbiſhop, he leaped out of it, and ordered the man into his chamber, who gave him the letters from the archbiſhop. The mayor opened and read their contents with pleaſure, and, inſtantly dreſſing himſelf, ſent off his ſervants with the intelligence of the earl of Derby's landing to the houſes of thoſe who had been the moſt active in ſending for him. All were rejoiced at the news; and about two hundred of the principal citizens aſſembled, who held no long council, for the caſe did not require it, but cried out,—'Come, let us haſten to make ourſelves ready, and go and meet our lord of Lancaſter, ſince we have invited him hither. The archbiſhop of Canterbury has done well to bring him; and let the earl's arrival be made known

known to such gallant lords and knights as are desirous to see him, and have him for their sovereign.'

Many persons were then selected to publish this intelligence, and carry it to the barons, knights and squires of their party. Upwards of five hundred Londoners mounted their horses, and were so impatient to see the earl of Derby, that they would scarcely wait one for another.

The earl made no long stay at Plymouth, but on the morrow, when the horses were disembarked, mounted them and took the road to London. Sir Peter de Craon and the Bretons still accompanied the earl of Derby.

The mayor of London and the chief citizens were the first who met the earl and the archbishop on the road. The meeting was very affectionate on both sides; and as they rode onward, they met more of the Londoners. They lay the first night at Guildford, twenty-eight miles from London. On the morrow, all the city of London knew that the earl of Derby was coming thither, and men, women, children and clergy, dressed in their best clothes, went to meet him, so eager were they to see him. The moment he came in sight, they shouted out, 'Welcome long-wished for earl of Derby and duke of Lancaster: may all joy and prosperity attend you!' They said,—'that ever since he had left England nothing good had befallen it: by him all things would be restored, and put on a proper footing; for we have lived in a wretched

wretched ſtate by the miſerable councils of Richard of Bordeaux, but he is moſt blameable himſelf; for a king, to ſucceed in the good government of his kingdom, ſhould have ſenſe and diſcretion enough to diſtinguiſh between good and evil, otherwiſe he is unfit to wear a crown; but this Richard has, in many reſpects, acted wrong from deſign, as ſhall be proved againſt him.'

Such were the greetings the earl of Derby had on his approach to London. The mayor of London rode by the ſide of the earl, to the delight of the people, who were pleaſed to ſee how kindly they were received. The mayor ſaid, 'See, my lord, how much the people are rejoiced at your arrival.' 'It is very true,' replied the earl. As he advanced, he bowed his head to the right and left, and noticed all comers with kindneſs.

In this ſtate they arrived in London, when the earl was eſcorted to his houſe; and every one retired to his own until he had dined. Then the mayor, the chief magiſtrates of London, and many barons, knights, biſhops, abbots, at the time in town, came to ſee the earl and congratulate him. The ducheſs of Gloceſter and her two daughters, who were his couſins german, waited likewiſe on him; but their brother Humphrey was with the king on his expedition to Ireland, more through conſtraint than love. With theſe ladies came the counteſs of Arundel and ſome of her children, as

did

did the lady Warwick and many other ladies reſident in London. The whole town was ſo rejoiced at the earl's return, that every ſhop was ſhut, and no more work done than if it had been Eaſter-day.

CHAP. XXI.

THE EARL OF DERBY, NOW DUKE OF LANCASTER, UNDERTAKES THE GOVERNMENT OF ENGLAND, AND, BY THE AID OF THE LONDONERS, DETERMINES TO SEIZE THE THRONE.—HE MARCHES IN ARMS AGAINST KING RICHARD AT BRISTOL.

TO bring this matter to a concluſion, it was determined to march againſt the king, whom the citizens of London and other towns called by no other title than Richard of Bordeaux; and the lower claſſes had ſuch a hatred to him, as not to be able to ſpeak of him but in his diſpraiſe. The Londoners already treated the earl of Derby as their king, and had formed reſolutions accordingly.

The earl of Derby engaged to undertake the government of England on condition the crown was ſettled on him and his heirs for ever, which the Londoners ſwore to obſerve, under their hands and ſeals, and promiſed that the reſt of England

ſhould do the ſame in ſo ſolemn a manner that there never ſhould be a queſtion concerning it: they alſo promiſed him aſſiſtance in men and money.

Theſe obligations having been entered into on each ſide, which did not take much time, for they were in haſte to free themſelves, twelve hundred *, well armed and mounted, were ordered to accompany the earl of Derby towards Briſtol, to make Richard of Bordeaux a priſoner, and conduct him to London. When there, he ſhould be legally tried before the nobles, prelates and commons of England, and judged according to the proof of the charges laid againſt him.

It was alſo ordered, to avoid ſlanderous reports, that the men at arms and croſs-bows, who had been lent by the duke of Brittany to the earl, as his eſcort, ſhould be ſent back, for they had men ſufficient for the purpoſe they were about. The earl, in conſequence, called the Bretons before him, thanked them warmly for the ſervices they had rendered him, and, on their departure, gave them ſo much money that they were contented. They returned to their veſſels at Plymouth, and thence ſailed to Brittany.

The earl of Derby was prepared to march to Briſtol as commander in chief of theſe Londoners, for he was more intereſted in the matter than any one elſe, and ſet out in grand array.

---

* Twelve hundred,—the MSS. ſay twelve thouſand, which is more probable.

He

He preſſed his march as much as he could, and was joined by all the countries he paſſed through. News was carried to the army of king Richard, of the march of the earl of Derby and the Londoners; but it was known to many knights, ſquires and archers, before the king; and ſeveral heard it who were afraid to tell him. When it became more public, there were many murmurings in the army; and thoſe about the perſon of the king were exceedingly alarmed, for they now ſaw matters were ripe with every miſchief and danger to the king and to themſelves. They knew they had many enemies in the kingdom; and that ſuch as had hitherto kept up fair appearances, now the earl of Derby was come back, would turn againſt them. Thus did it happen; for numbers of knights and ſquires who had ſerved the king in this campaign, diſſembled, and quitted him without taking leave, or ſaying they were going away. Some retired to their houſes, and others went ſtraight to the earl of Derby and joined his army.

As ſoon as Humphrey of Gloceſter, and Richard of Arundel, ſon to the late earl, knew for certain of the earl of Derby's approach, they left the king, and never ſtopped until they had joined him. The earl and his army had paſſed Oxford, and were then at a town called Cirenceſter: he had great joy in receiving his couſins, and aſked the ſtate of king Richard, where he was, and how they had managed to quit him. They replied, that they had not ſpoken to him of their departure;

but the moment they had heard of his march, they had mounted their horſes, and haſtened to offer him their ſervices, and to revenge the loſs of their fathers, whom Richard of Bordeaux had put to death.

The earl bade them welcome, and ſaid,—'We will mutually aſſiſt each other. Richard of Bordeaux muſt be carried to London, for ſo have I promiſed the Londoners, and will keep my word, and they are willing to aid me with all their power. We have men enough to fight with him; and, if he wiſh it, we will give him battle.'

CHAP. XXII.

KING RICHARD IS INFORMED THAT THE EARL OF DERBY IS MARCHING AGAINST HIM WITH A POWERFUL ARMY.—HE RETIRES TO FLINT-CASTLE *.

WHEN matters could not longer be concealed, it was told to king Richard,—'Sire, take care of yourſelf: you muſt have good and ſpeedy counſel, for the Londoners have riſen with a mighty power, and intend to march againſt you. They have elected the earl of Derby, your couſin, their commander, and by his advice they act:

* It was Conway-caſtle to which Richard retired.

you

you may be aſſured that ſome ſtrong treaties have been entered into between them ſince he has croſſed the ſea by their invitation.'

The king was thunderſtruck at hearing this, and knew not what anſwer to make; for his courage forſook him, and he foreſaw affairs would end badly unleſs proper ſteps were immediately taken. Having muſed a while, he replied to the knights who had given him this information,—'Inſtantly make ready our men at arms and archers, and iſſue a ſpecial ſummons throughout the kingdom for the aſſembling of all my vaſſals, as I will not fly before my ſubjects.' 'By God,' anſwered the knights, 'every thing goes badly, for your men are leaving you and running off. You have already loſt half your army, and the remainder are panicſtruck and wavering.' 'What can I do then?' aſked the king. 'We will tell you, ſire: quit the field, for you cannot hold it longer, and make for one of your caſtles, where you can remain until your brother, ſir John Holland, who is enterpriſing and courageous, and muſt now have heard of the rebellion, come to you: he will, by force or negotiations, bring your affairs into a different ſtate from that in which they are at preſent. When it is known that he has taken the field, many who have fled from you will join him.'

The king agreed to this advice. The earl of Saliſbury was not then with him, but in another part of the country; and, when he heard that the earl of Derby was marching a large army againſt the king, he judged things would turn out badly

for his maſter, and for all who had been his adviſers. He therefore remained quiet, waiting for further intelligence.

The duke of York had not accompanied the king on this expedition: but his ſon, the earl of Rutland, had been induced to join him, for two reaſons; one, in return for the great affection king Richard had ſhewn him; the other, becauſe he was conſtable of England. It was, therefore, neceſſary he ſhould attend his king.

Other news was brought the king, as he ſupped: they ſaid,—'Sire, you muſt determine how you will act; for your army is as nothing compared to the force marching againſt you, and a combat will be of no avail, and appeaſe the malcontents as you have formerly done, by kind words and fair promiſes, and puniſh them afterwards at your leiſure. There is a caſtle twelve miles from hence, called Flint, that is tolerably ſtrong: we therefore adviſe that you fly thither and remain ſhut up as long as you pleaſe, or until you hear other news from ſir John Holland and your friends. We will ſend to Ireland for ſuccour; and when the king of France, your father-in-law, ſhall hear of your diſtreſs, he will aſſiſt you.'

King Richard liſtened to this advice, and thought it good: he ſelected ſuch as he wiſhed to accompany him, and ordered the earl of Rutland to remain at Briſtol with the remnant of the army, ready prepared to advance when they ſhould hear other news, or when they ſhould be ſufficiently ſtrong to combat their enemies.

Theſe

Theſe commands were obeyed; and the king, attended by his houſehold only, departed on the enſuing morning for Flint-caſtle, which they entered without ſhewing any appearance of making war on any one, but ſolely to defend themſelves and the place, ſhould they be attacked*.

CHAP. XXIII.

KING RICHARD SURRENDERS HIMSELF TO THE EARL OF DERBY, TO BE CONDUCTED TO LONDON.

THE earl of Derby and the Londoners had ſpies who brought them daily accounts of the ſtate of the king, which were confirmed by knights and ſquires, who had left his army to join the earl. The intelligence of the king having fled to Flint-caſtle was ſoon known to him; and that he had there ſhut himſelf up with a few men at arms, of his houſehold, ſhewing no ſymptoms of making war, but to get out of his difficulties, if poſſible, by a treaty.

The earl was adviſed to march thither, and get poſſeſſion of his perſon by force or otherwiſe. This was followed; and, when the army was within two miles of Flint, they came to a village, where they

* This account of Froiſſart is very incorrect, and I refer t the different Engliſh chronicles.

halted, and the earl refreſhed himſelf with meat and drink. He there reſolved in his own mind, without conſulting others, to march with only two hundred horſe, leaving the reſt behind, and, when near the caſtle wherein the king was, to endeavour, by fair ſpeeches, to enter the caſtle, and cajole the king to come forth and truſt to him, who would inſure him againſt all perils on his road to London, engaging that he ſhould not ſuffer any bodily harm, and promiſing to mediate between him and the Londoners, who were greatly enraged againſt him. This plan was approved of by thoſe to whom he mentioned it; but he was told,—'My lord, beware of any diſſimulation in the buſineſs: Richard of Bordeaux muſt be taken, dead or alive, with all the traitors who have been his adviſers, and conducted to the Tower of London. Neither the Londoners nor we will hear any thing to the contrary.'

The earl of Derby replied,—'Do not fear: what I have propoſed ſhall be executed. If I can, by fair words, get him out of the caſtle, I will do it; but, if he refuſe to liſten to me, I ſhall inſtantly make you acquainted with it. You will advance the main army immediately, and we will beſiege the caſtle, and by aſſault have him dead or alive, for the place is to be taken.'

The Londoners were now ſatisfied, and the earl left the army with two hundred horſe. They ſoon came before the caſtle, where the king was ſhut up in one of the chambers much caſt down. The earl and his men rode to the gate, which was cloſed,

closed, for the case required it, and knocked loudly. Those within asked, 'Who is there?' The earl replied, 'I am Henry of Lancaster, and am come to demand from the king my inheritance of the duchy of Lancaster. Tell him so from me.' 'My lord,' answered those who heard him, 'we will cheerfully do it,' and instantly ascended to the hall where the king was with those of his knights that had for a long time been his chief counsellors, and related the message, for he was eager to hear who had so rudely knocked at the gate—'Sire, it is your cousin the earl of Derby, who is come to demand his inheritance from you.'

The king looked at his knights, and asked how he should act. 'Sire,' replied they, 'this request is no way improper: you may allow him to come into your presence, with only eleven others, and hear what he has to say. He is your cousin, and a great lord of the country, and can besides, if he please, make up all differences; for he is exceedingly beloved in England, more especially by the Londoners, who sent for him beyond sea, and are now in rebellion against you. You must dissemble until matters be appeased, and the earl of Huntingdon, your brother, arrived. It is unfortunate for him and you that he is at this moment at Calais; for there are many in England who now rebel against you, that, were he by your side, would remain quiet, and not dare take any part. He is married to the sister of the earl of Derby, and, by his good sense and exertions, we hope

and

and ſuppoſe he will make peace between you and your people.'

The king conſented to this propoſal, and ſaid, 'Go to him: have the gates opened that he and eleven more may enter.' Two knights then left the king, and, croſſing the court of the caſtle, came to the gate, and had the wicket opened. Having paſſed it, they bowed to the earl of Derby and to his knights, addreſſing them in courteous language; for they felt they had no force to reſiſt them, and that they were hated by the Londoners. They wiſhed therefore to accommodate matters by fair ſpeeches and outward appearances. They ſaid to the earl; 'My lord, what is your pleaſure? The king is at maſs, and has ſent us hither to ſpeak with you.'

'I will tell you,' anſwered the earl. 'You know that I ought to have poſſeſſion of the duchy of Lancaſter: I am come partly on that account, and on ſome other buſineſs I wiſh to ſpeak of to the king.' 'My lord,' replied they, 'you are welcome: the king will ſee and hear you with pleaſure, and has told us that you and eleven more may enter the caſtle.' The earl ſaid it pleaſed him; and he and eleven others paſſed the wicket, which was inſtantly ſhut on the others who remained without.

Conſider the great riſk and danger the earl of Derby ran, for they could as eaſily have ſlain him, when in the caſtle, (which they ſhould have done, right or wrong) and his companions, as birds in a

cage.

cage. He never thought of the peril he was in, but went ſtraight forward, and was conducted to the king. The king, on ſeeing him, changed colour, as one who knew he had greatly miſconducted himſelf. The earl ſpoke aloud, without paying any reverence or honour to the king, and aſked him, 'Have you broken your faſt?' The king anſwered, 'No: it is yet early morn: why do you aſk?' 'It is time you ſhould breakfaſt,' replied the earl, 'for you have a long way to ride.' 'What road?' ſaid the king. 'You muſt come to London,' anſwered the earl; 'and I adviſe that you eat and drink heartily, to perform the journey more gaily.' The king was now very melancholy, and frightened at theſe words: he ſaid, 'I am not as yet hungry, nor have I any deſire to eat.' The knights, deſirous to flatter the earl of Derby, (perceiving things were taking a ſerious turn) ſaid, 'Sire, have confidence in my lord of Lancaſter, your couſin, for he can but wiſh your good.' 'Well,' ſaid the king, 'I am willing ſo to do: have the tables covered.'

They haſtened to obey theſe orders; and the king waſhed his hands, ſeated himſelf at table, and was ſerved. They aſked the earl if he would not be ſeated, and eat. He ſaid, 'no; for that he had breakfaſted.' During the time the king was eating (which was not long, for his heart was too much oppreſſed to eat) the whole country was covered with men at arms and archers, who could be plainly ſeen from the windows of the caſtle. The king, on riſing from table, perceived them,

and

and aſked his couſin the earl who they were. He replied, ‘ For the moſt part Londoners.’ ‘ And what do they want?’ ſaid the king. ‘ They want to take you,’ anſwered the earl, ‘ and carry you to the Tower of London, and there is not any means of pacifying them, unleſs you conſent to go.’ ‘ No!’ replied the king, who was much frightened at hearing this, for he knew the Londoners hated him, and continued, ‘ cannot you, couſin, prevent this? I would not willingly yield myſelf into their hands; for I am aware they hate me, and have done ſo for a long time, although I am their ſovereign.’

The earl of Derby anſwered,—‘ I ſee no other way to prevent it, but to ſurrender yourſelf to me, and, when they know you are my priſoner, they will not do you any harm. You muſt make preparations to be conducted and impriſoned in the Tower of London with your attendants.’ The king, not knowing how to act in his diſtreſs, and fearing the Londoners would put him to death, yielded himſelf priſoner to the earl of Derby, promiſing to do whatever he ſhould adviſe. His knights, ſquires and officers, ſurrendered in like manner, to avoid greater danger. The earl, in the preſence of thoſe who had accompanied him, received the king and his attendants as his priſoners, and ordered the horſes to be inſtantly ſaddled, brought to the court, and the gates of the caſtle to be thrown open, on which many men at arms and archers entered it.

The earl of Derby now iſſued a proclamation, that

that no one ſhould dare to touch any thing in the caſtle, or lay hands on any ſervant or officer of the king, under pain of being inſtantly hanged, for that every perſon and thing were under his ſpecial protection and guard. This was obeyed, for there was not one bold enough to act contrary.

The earl conducted his couſin, king Richard, down ſtairs to the court of the caſtle, continuing in cloſe converſation with him, where he had his uſual ſtate, without the ſmalleſt change having been made in it. While they were ſaddling the horſes, and making ready, they talked on different ſubjects, and were much looked at by the Londoners.

I heard of a ſingular circumſtance that happened, which I muſt mention. King Richard had a greyhound called Math *, beautiful beyond meaſure, who would not notice nor follow any one but the king. Whenever the king rode abroad, the greyhound was looſed by the perſon who had him in charge, and ran inſtantly to careſs him, by placing his two fore feet on his ſhoulders. It fell out, that as the king and the duke of Lancaſter were converſing in the court of the caſtle, their horſes being ready for them to mount, the grey-

* The Muſeum MSS. call this greyhound Blemach, mine Mach. The greyhound ſeems to have been a favourite prognoſticator in theſe times; for, when the armies of the two rivals, John of Montford and Charles de Blois, were on the point of engaging, the lord Charles's greyhound left him and careſſed John of Montford, who gained the battle.

hound

hound was untied, but, inſtead of running as uſual to the king, he left him, and leaped to the duke of Lancaſter's ſhoulders, paying him every court, and careſſing him as he was formerly uſed to careſs the king. The duke, not acquainted with this greyhound, aſked the king the meaning of his fondneſs, ſaying, 'What does this mean?' 'Couſin,' replied the king, 'it means a great deal for you, and very little for me.' 'How!' ſaid the duke: 'pray explain it.' 'I underſtand by it,' anſwered the king, 'that this greyhound fondles and pays his court to you this day as king of England, which you will ſurely be, and I ſhall be depoſed, for the natural inſtinct of the dog ſhews it to him. Keep him therefore by your ſide, for he will now leave me, and follow you.'

The duke of Lancaſter treaſured up what the king had ſaid, and paid attention to the greyhound, who would never more follow Richard of Bordeaux, but kept by the ſide of the duke of Lancaſter, as was witneſſed by thirty thouſand men.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIV.

THE LADY OF COUCY IS TAKEN AWAY FROM THE YOUNG QUEEN OF ENGLAND, AND A NEW HOUSEHOLD APPOINTED FOR HER.—KING RICHARD IS CONFINED IN THE TOWER OF LONDON.

HAVING mounted their horſes, they departed from Flint-caſtle, and Henry duke of Lancaſter, whom we ſhall no longer call earl of Derby, rode by the king's ſide, and at times converſed with him. They were ſurrounded by a large body of men at arms and archers. Thoſe of the king's party advanced by themſelves, and the firſt town they lay at was Oxford *; for the duke of Lancaſter

* 'After the king had been carried to the duke of Lancaſter at Cheſter, on the third day the duke departed with his priſoner thence to Nantwich; the next day to Newcaſtle, and there the earl of Warwick's ſon met them; and ſo journeying forth, the next day they came to Stafford, and after they departed to Lichfield, where the king thought to have eſcaped, ſlipping down into a garden, out of a window of a great tower; but he was eſpied, aud brought into the tower again. From Lichfield, the duke went to Coventry; but, before they could come thither, the Welſhmen did them much miſchief, and ſlew many of them; and the Engliſhmen, when they by great chance could take any of them, they tied to their horſes' tails, and drew them after them through ways full of ſtones, and cauſed them to die miſerably.

'The duke paſſed from Coventry to Daventry, the next day to Northampton, from thence to Dunſtable, and then to Saint Albans. Within five or ſix miles before his coming to London,

Lancaſter avoided all the large towns and caſtles, by keeping in the open country, for fear of inſurrections of the people. The duke diſbanded a great part of his army, ſaying, 'he had enough for the completion of his buſineſs, as the king could not now fly nor eſcape from him. We will carry him and his adviſers to London, and ſecurely place them in the Tower. They are my priſoners, and I can take them any where: return, therefore, to your homes until you ſhall again hear from me.'

All aſſented to this propoſal of the duke, who took the direct road to Windſor; and the Londoners, except thoſe he had kept with him, went to their homes. The duke of Lancaſter, on leaving Windſor, did not follow the road to Colnbrook, but that to Shene, and dined with the king at Chertſey. King Richard had earneſtly requeſted his couſin not to carry him through London, which was the reaſon they had gone this road.

As ſoon as the Londoners were maſters of the king, they ſent ſome of the principal citizens to queen Iſabella, who reſided with the lady of Coucy at Leeds-caſtle. She was next in rank to the queen; and they addreſſed her,—'Lady, make preparations of departure, for you muſt not longer remain here. Take care, on quitting the queen, that you ſhew not any tokens of anger at being diſmiſſed,

---

don, the mayor and the companies in their liveries, with great noiſe of trumpets, met the duke, doing more reverence to him than to the king, rejoicing that God had ſent them ſuch a prince, that had conquered the realm within one month's ſpace,' &c.

Stowe's Chronicle, by Howes, pp. 322, 323.

diſmiſſed; but ſay, that your huſband and daughter have ſent for you. This we adviſe you to do, if you regard your life; for, ſhould you act any way contrary, it will be forfeited. You have no need to aſk queſtions, nor make inquiries: you ſhall be conducted to Dover, and embark on board a paſſage-boat to convey you to Boulogne.'

The lady of Coucy, afraid of theſe menaces, and knowing thoſe who made them to be cruel and full of hatred, replied, 'that in God's name, ſhe would do as they wiſhed.' Preparations were ſoon made: palfreys and hackneys were provided for herſelf and attendants; and all the French of both ſexes ſet off, eſcorted as far as Dover, when they were liberally paid, according to their degrees. The firſt tide, they embarked on board a veſſel, with a favourable wind to Boulogne. The houſehold of the queen was thus broken up, and neither French nor Engliſh were left with her who were attached to king Richard. A new one was formed of ladies, damſels, officers and varlets, who were ſtrictly enjoined never to mention the name of king Richard in their converſations with her.

The duke of Lancaſter and his company, on their departure from Chertſey, rode to Shene, and, during the night, conducted the king and ſuch of his knights and others as they wiſhed to confine, to the Tower of London. On the morrow, the Londoners heard the king was in the Tower, and were much rejoiced; but there were many murmurings that he had been brought thither privately, and the people were very angry with the duke of Lancaſter becauſe he had not carried him

publicly through the ſtreets in open day, not to do him honour, but that they might ſhew their ſcorn, ſo much was he hated by them.

Conſider how ſerious a thing it is when the people riſe up in arms againſt their ſovereign, more eſpecially ſuch a people as the Engliſh. In ſuch a caſe, there is no remedy; for they are the worſt people in the world, the moſt obſtinate and preſumptuous; and of all England the Londoners are the leaders, for, to ſay the truth, they are very powerful in men and in wealth. In the city and neighbourhood, there are twenty-four thouſand men, completely armed from head to foot, and full thirty thouſand archers. This is a great force, and they are bold and courageous; and the more blood is ſpilt, the greater their courage.

CHAP. XXV.

THE EARL OF RUTLAND, CONSTABLE OF ENGLAND, HEARING THE KING HAS SURRENDERED, DISMISSES HIS MEN AT ARMS.—FOUR KNIGHTS OF THE KING'S CHAMBER, HAVING BEEN PUT TO DEATH BY THE LONDONERS, HE IS ADVISED BY THOSE WHO WERE IMPRISONED WITH HIM TO RESIGN HIS CROWN TO THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.

WE will ſpeak of the earl of Rutland, ſon to the duke of York, at this time conſtable of England, who had remained at Briſtol with his brother-

brother-in-law the lord de Spencer, and their men. When they learnt that the caſtle the king had retired to was inveſted, and that the king, on his ſurrendering, was carried to London, they inſtantly foreſaw the event, and that it muſt end badly for king Richard.

They determined not to ſtay longer where they were, but diſmiſſing their men at arms, except ſuch as were attached to their perſons, left Briſtol, and rode to a very handſome ſeat* the lord de Spencer had in Wales, where they remained until they heard other intelligence.

The duke of York reſided at his own caſtle with his people, and interfered not in what was paſſing in the country, nor had done ſo for a long time, but taking all things as they happened, although he was very much vexed that there ſhould be ſuch great differences between his nephew, the king, and his relations.

We will return to king Richard. When the duke of Lancaſter had impriſoned him and thoſe of his council in the Tower, and placed ſure guards over them, the firſt thing he did was to recal the earl of Warwick from his baniſhment, and to give him his liberty. He next ſent to ſummon the earl of Percy and his ſon ſir Harry Percy to attend him, which they did. He then enquired how he could lay hands on thoſe four companions who had

* D. Sauvage calls this ſeat Heulle. My MS. ſays only a very handſome manor, which I ſuppoſe muſt have been Caerphilly in Glamorganſhire.

ſtrangled his uncle in the caſtle of Calais, and at length ſucceeded in arreſting the whole four, and would not have taken twenty thouſand nobles for their deliverance. He had them confined in ſeparate priſons in London.

The duke then conſulted with his council and the citizens what ſhould be done with Richard of Bordeaux, who was confined in the great Tower of London, wherein king John of France was once impriſoned, during the campaign of king Edward in France. It was reſolved that the king ſhould be deprived of all his ſtate and outward marks of royalty, if they wiſhed to act prudently, for the news of his arreſt would make a great noiſe throughout Chriſtendom, as they had acknowledged him twenty-two years as their king, and now held him a priſoner.

They examined the whole acts of his reign, and drew up twenty-eight articles againſt him, with which they came to the Tower, accompanied by the duke of Lancaſter, and ſome knights and ſquires of his council. They entered the king's apartment without ſpeaking to him, or paying any kind of reſpect, and read to him theſe charges. He did not deny them, for he knew they were true, but ſaid that every thing he had done was by the advice of his council.

He was told to name thoſe who had been his principal adviſers, which he did, hoping to eſcape by throwing the blame on them, as he had formerly done, and they to receive the puniſhment; but this was not the intention of thoſe Londoners who

who had confined him. At this time they said nothing further, but went away: the duke of Lancaster to his own house, leaving the mayor and men of law to act as they pleased.

The mayor went to the town-house of London, called the Guildhall, where justice is administered to the citizens, followed by crowds of people, expecting something effective to be done, as indeed there was. I will detail what passed. First, all the articles which had been drawn up against the king and read to him, were again read aloud, with comments by the person who read them, adding, that the king had not denied their truth, but confessed he had done them through the advice of four knights of his chamber, by whose counsels he had put to death the duke of Gloceſter, the earl of Arundel and sir Thomas Corbet, and that they had for a long time excited him to these acts. Such deeds were unpardonable, and must be punished; for by them and their fellows had the courts of justice been shut at Westminster, and all the other royal courts throughout England, which had caused great mischiefs, and encouraged bands of robbers, to pillage merchants travelling from town to town, and to plunder the houses of farmers. By these means the kingdom of England had been almost irrecoverably ruined; and it was to be supposed, from this wanton neglect of England, that Calais or Guisnes, or both, would have been given up to their enemies the French.

Such speeches as the above made an impression on the minds of the people, so that many of the

diſcontented ſaid,—'Theſe things are deſerving puniſhment, that others might take example; and Richard of Bordeaux has ſo much diſgraced himſelf, that he is unworthy of wearing a crown, and ought to be deprived of all honours, and confined to paſs his future life on bread and water, and ſubſiſt on that as he could.' Some of the lower claſſes cried out,—'Sir mayor, you and your companions, who are the diſtributors of juſtice, look that it be done: we inſiſt upon it, and ſpare no man. You ſee, by what you have told us, that the caſe requires it, and immediately, for they have convicted themſelves.'

The mayor and the lawyers retired to the judgment-ſeat, and the four knights were condemned to death. They were ſentenced to be brought before the apartment of the Tower of London in which king Richard was confined, that he might ſee them from the windows, and thence drawn on ſledges by horſes through the ſtreets to Cheapſide, each perſon ſeparately, and there beheaded, their heads affixed to ſpikes on London-bridge, and their bodies hung on a gibbet, and there left.

When this ſentence was pronounced, they haſtened to execute it. Every thing being prepared, the mayor of London, and the lords who had aſſiſted him in this judgment, ſet out from Guildhall with a large body of people, and came to the Tower of London, where they ſeized the four knights of the king, ſir Bernard Brocas, the lord Marclais, maſter John Derby, receiver of Lincoln, and the lord Stelle, ſteward of the king's houſehold.

hold. They were brought into the court, and each tied to two horſes, in the ſight of all in the Tower, who were eye-witneſſes of it as well as the king, who were much diſpleaſed, and in deſpair; for the remainder of the king's knights that were with him looked for ſimilar treatment, ſo cruel and revengeful did they know the Londoners to be.

Without ſaying a word, theſe four were dragged from the Tower, through the ſtreets to Cheapſide, and, on a fiſhmonger's ſtall, had their heads ſtruck off, which were placed over the gate on London-bridge, and their bodies hung on a gibbet. After this execution every man retired to his home.

King Richard was much afflicted at finding himſelf in ſuch danger from the citizens, and that his power was completely gone. He ſaw that all England was againſt him; and, if he had ſome few friends left, they could not aſſiſt him, for his enemies were too numerous. Thoſe about him ſaid; 'Sire, we have not, as it ſeems, any great hope of ſaving our lives. When your couſin of Lancaſter prevailed on you to yield yourſelf up to him, he promiſed that you and twelve of your knights ſhould be his own priſoners, and no harm done to them: of theſe, four have juſt been put to a diſgraceful death: we muſt expect the ſame, and will give you our reaſons for it. The Londoners, who have urged him to do this deed, have made him enter into ſuch engagements with them that he cannot act in any other manner. God will be very merciful to us if we are ſuffered to

die here a natural death, for to die a diſgraceful one makes us ſhudder.'

King Richard, on hearing them thus talk, wept bitterly, wrung his hands, and curſed the hour he had been born, when his end was ſo miſerable. Thoſe around him pitied his diſtreſs, and comforted him as well as they were able. One of his knights ſaid—'Sire, you muſt not be too much caſt down. We ſee, as well as you, that this world is nothing, and that the ficklenefs of fortune is wonderful, ſparing neither princes nor poor perſons. The king of France, whoſe daughter you have married, cannot at this moment aſſiſt you, for he is too far off. If you can, by diſſembling, eſcape from this peril, and ſave your life and ours, you will act well; and, within a year or two, your fortune may change.'

'What would you have me do?' replied the king, 'for there is nothing I will not attempt to ſave us.'

'Sire, we tell you for a truth, that from every appearance, the Londoners want to crown your couſin of Lancaſter their king; and with this intent they ſent for him from France, and have aided him in all his exploits. Now it is impoſſible, that ſo long as you ſhall be alive, this coronation can take place without your conſent. Suppoſe, therefore, you were to offer your couſin terms, that we might eſcape the imminent danger we are in, and that you ſend to ſpeak with him on buſineſs. On his coming, treat him affectionately, and ſay that you wiſh to reſign the crown into his hands,

hands, and that he be king: by this means, you will ſoften him and appeaſe the citizens. You will earneſtly beg, that he allow you to finiſh your days here, or elſewhere; and for us to remain with you, or be ſeparated, or baniſhed abroad for our lives, at his pleaſure; for he who loſeth his life loſeth every thing.'

King Richard heard theſe words with comfort to his heart, and ſaid he would act accordingly, for he ſaw his danger was very great. He gave his keepers to underſtand he would willingly ſpeak with the duke of Lancaſter.

CHAP. XXVI.

KING RICHARD OF ENGLAND RESIGNS HIS CROWN AND KINGDOM INTO THE HANDS OF THE DUKE OF LANCASTER.

INTELLIGENCE was carried to the duke of Lancaſter that Richard of Bourdeaux had a great deſire to ſeak with him. The duke left his houſe in the evening, entered his barge with his knights, and was rowed down the Thames to the Tower, which he entered by a poſtern gate, and went to the apartment of the king.

The king received him with great kindneſs, and humbled himſelf exceedingly like to one who perceives he is in a dangerous ſtate. He addreſſed him

him—' Couſin, I have been conſidering my ſituation, which is miſerable enough, and I have no longer any thoughts of wearing my crown or governing my people. As God may have my ſoul, I wiſh I were at this moment dead of a natural death, and the king of France had his daughter again; for we have never enjoyed any great happineſs together, nor ſince I have brought her hither have I had the love my people bore me formerly. Couſin of Lancaſter, when I look back, I am convinced I have behaved very ill to you, and to other nobles of my blood, for which I cannot expect peace nor pardon. All things, therefore, conſidered, I am willing freely to reſign to you the crown of England; and I beg you will accept the reſignation as a gift.'

The duke replied, ' that it would be neceſſary the three eſtates of the realm ſhould hear this. I have iſſued ſummonſes for the aſſembling the nobles, prelates and deputies, from the principal towns; and within three days a ſufficiency will be collected for you to make your reſignation in due form. By this act, you will greatly appeaſe the hatred of the nation againſt you. To obviate the miſchiefs that had ariſen from the courts of juſtice being ſhut, and which had created an almoſt univerſal anarchy, was I ſent for from beyond ſea. The people wanted to crown me, for the common report in the country is, that I have a better right to the crown than you have. This was told to our grandfather, king Edward of happy memory, when he educated you, and had you acknowledged

heir

heir to the throne; but his love was ſo ſtrong for his ſon, the prince of Wales, nothing could make him alter his purpoſe, but that you muſt be king. If you had followed the example of the prince, or attended to the advice of his counſellors, like a good ſon, who ſhould be anxious to tread in the ſteps of a father, you might ſtill have been king; but you have always acted ſo contrary, as to occaſion the rumour to be generally believed throughout England and elſewhere, that you are not the ſon of the prince of Wales, but of a prieſt or canon.

'I have heard ſeveral knights, who were of the houſehold of my uncle the prince, declare, that he was jealous of the princeſs's conduct. She was couſin-german to king Edward, who began to diſlike her for not having children by his ſon, ſince he had, by her former marriage with ſir Thomas Holland, ſtood god-father to two ſons. She knew well how to keep the prince in her chains, having, through ſubtlety, enticed him to marry; but, fearful of being divorced by his father, for want of heirs, and that the prince would marry again, it was ſaid ſhe got connected with ſome one, by whom ſhe had you and another ſon, who died in his infancy, and no judgment can be formed of his character: but you, from your manners and mode of acting, ſo contrary to the gallantry and proweſs of the prince, are thought to be the ſon of a prieſt or canon; for, at the time of your birth, there were many young

and

and handſome ones in the houſehold of the prince at Bourdeaux.

'Such is the report of this country, which your conduct has confirmed; for you have ever ſhewn great affection to the French, and an inclination to live on good terms with them, to the loſs and diſhonour of England. Becauſe my uncle of Gloceſter and the earl of Arundel wiſhed you would loyally defend the honour of the kingdom, by following the ſteps of your anceſtors, you have treacherouſly put them to death.

'With regard to me, I have taken you under my protection, and will guard and preſerve your life, through compaſſion, as long as I ſhall be able. I will likewiſe entreat the Londoners in your behalf, and the heirs of thoſe you have put to death.'

'Many thanks,' anſwered the king: 'I have greater confidence in you than in any other perſon in England.' 'You are in the right,' replied the duke; 'for, had I not ſtepped forward between you and the people, they would have ſeized you, and diſgracefully killed you, in return for all your wicked acts, which are the cauſe of the dangerous ſtate you are now in.'

King Richard heard all this patiently, for he ſaw that neither arguments nor force could avail, and that reſignation and humility were his only arms. He therefore humbled himſelf exceedingly to the duke, earneſtly begging that his life might be ſpared. The duke of Lancaſter remained

with

with the king upwards of two hours, and continued in his converſation to reproach him for all the faults he was accuſed of. He then took leave, re-entered his barge, and returned to his houſe, and, on the morrow, renewed his orders for the aſſembly of the three eſtates of the realm.

The duke of York, and his ſon the earl of Rutland, came to London, as did the earl of Northumberland and his brother, ſir Thomas Percy, to whom the duke of Lancaſter gave a hearty welcome, with numbers of prelates, biſhops and abbots. The duke of Lancaſter, accompanied by a large body of dukes, prelates, earls, barons, knights and principal citizens, rode to the Tower of London, and diſmounted in the court. King Richard was releaſed from his priſon, and entered the hall which had been prepared for the occaſion, royally dreſſed, the ſceptre in his hand, and the crown on his head, but without ſupporters on either ſide. He addreſſed the company as follows: 'I have reigned king of England, duke of Aquitaine, and lord of Ireland, about twenty-two years, which royalty, lordſhip, ſceptre and crown, I now freely and willingly reſign to my couſin, Henry of Lancaſter, and entreat of him, in the preſence of you all, to accept this ſceptre.'

He then tendered the ſceptre to the duke of Lancaſter, who took it and gave it to the archbiſhop of Canterbury. King Richard next raiſed the crown with his two hands from his head, and, placing

placing it before him, ſaid, 'Henry, fair couſin, and duke of Lancaſter, I preſent and give to you this crown, with which I was crowned king of England, and all the rights dependant on it.'

The duke of Lancaſter received it, and delivered it over to the archbiſhop of Canterbury, who was at hand to take it. Theſe two things being done, and the reſignation accepted, the duke of Lancaſter called in a public notary, that an authentic act ſhould be drawn up of this proceeding, and witneſſed by the lords and prelates then preſent. Soon after, the king was conducted to where he had come from, and the duke and other lords mounted their horſes to return home. The two jewels were ſafely packed up, and given to proper guards, to place them in the treaſury of Weſtminſter abbey, until they ſhould be called for when the parliament were aſſembled.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVII.

A PARLIAMENT MEETS AT WESTMINSTER, WHEN THE DUKE OF LANCASTER IS PUBLICLY ACKNOWLEDGED KING OF ENGLAND.—THE GREAT MAGNIFICENCE OF HIS CORONATION.

ON a Wedneſday, the laſt day of September 1399, Henry duke of Lancaſter held a parliament at Weſtminſter; at which were aſſembled the greater part of the clergy and nobility of England, and a ſufficient number of deputies from the different towns, according to their extent and wealth.

In this parliament, the duke of Lancaſter challenged the crown of England, and claimed it as his own, for three reaſons: firſt, by conqueſt; ſecondly, from being the right heir to it; and, thirdly, from the pure and free reſignation of it to him, by king Richard, in the preſence of the prelates, dukes and earls in the hall of the Tower of London. Theſe three claims being made, he required the parliament to declare their opinion and will. Upon this, they unanimouſly replied, that it was their will he ſhould be king, for they would have no other. He again aſked, if they were poſitive in this declaration; and, when they ſaid they were, he ſeated himſelf on the royal throne. This throne was elevated ſome feet from the floor, with a rich

a rich canopy of cloth of gold, ſo that he could be ſeen by all preſent. On the king's taking his ſeat, the people clapped their hands for joy, and held them up, promiſing him fealty and homage. The parliament was then diſſolved, and the day of coronation appointed for the feaſt of Saint Edward, which fell on a Monday, the 13th of October.

On the Saturday before the coronation, the new king went from Weſtminſter to the Tower of London, attended by great numbers, and thoſe ſquires who were to be knighted watched their arms that night: they amounted to forty-ſix: each ſquire had his chamber and bath, in which he bathed. The enſuing day, the duke of Lancaſter, after maſs, created them knights, and preſented them with long green coats, with ſtraight ſleeves lined with minever, after the manner of prelates. Theſe knights had on their left ſhoulders a double cord of white ſilk, with white tufts hanging down.

The duke of Lancaſter left the Tower this Sunday after dinner, on his return to Weſtminſter: he was bare headed, and had round his neck the order of the king of France. The prince of Wales, ſix dukes, ſix earls, eighteen barons, accompanied him; and there were, of knights and other nobility, from eight to nine hundred horſe in the proceſſion. The duke was dreſſed in a jacket, after the German faſhion, of cloth of gold, mounted on a white courſer, with a blue garter on his left leg. He paſſed through the ſtreets of London,

which

which were all handſomely decorated with tapeſtries and other rich hangings: there were nine fountains in Cheapſide, and other ſtreets he paſſed through, which perpetually ran with white and red wines. He was eſcorted by prodigious numbers of gentlemen, with their ſervants in liveries and badges; and the different companies of London were led by their wardens clothed in their proper livery, and with enſigns of their trade. The whole cavalcade amounted to ſix thouſand horſe, which eſcorted the duke from the Tower to Weſtminſter.

That ſame night the duke bathed, and on the morrow confeſſed himſelf, as he had good need to do, and according to his cuſtom heard three maſſes. The prelates and clergy who had been aſſembled then came in a large body in proceſſion from Weſtminſter-abbey, to conduct the king thither, and returned in the ſame manner, the king and his lords following them. The dukes, earls, and barons, wore long ſcarlet robes, with mantles trimmed with ermine, and large hoods of the ſame. The dukes and earls had three bars of ermine on the left arm, a quarter of a yard long, or thereabout: the barons had but two. All the knights and ſquires had uniform cloaks of ſcarlet lined with minever. In the proceſſion to the church, the duke had borne over his head a rich canopy of blue ſilk, ſupported on ſilver ſtaves, with four golden bells that rang at the corners, by four burgeſſes of Dover, who claimed it as their right. On each ſide of him were the ſword of

Mercy and the ſword of Juſtice: the firſt was borne by the prince of Wales, and the other by the earl of Northumberland, conſtable of England, for the earl of Rutland had been diſmiſſed. The earl of Weſtmoreland, marſhal of England, carried the ſceptre.

The proceſſion entered the church about nine o'clock; in the middle of which was erected a ſcaffold covered with crimſon cloth, and in the centre a royal throne of cloth of gold. When the duke entered the church, he ſeated himſelf on the throne, and was thus in regal ſtate, except having the crown on his head. The archbiſhop of Canterbury proclaimed from the four corners of the ſcaffold, how God had given them a man for their lord and ſovereign, and then aſked the people if they were conſenting to his being conſecrated and crowned king. They unanimouſly ſhouted out, 'Aye!' and held up their hands, promiſing fealty and homage.

After this, the duke deſcended from his throne, and advanced to the altar to be conſecrated. This ceremony was performed by two archbiſhops and ten biſhops: he was ſtripped of all his royal ſtate before the altar, naked to his ſhirt, and was then anointed and conſecrated at ſix places; that is to ſay, on the head, the breaſt, the two ſhoulders, before and behind, on the back and hands: they then placed a bonnet on his head; and, while this was doing, the clergy chaunted the litany, or the ſervice that is performed to hallow a font.

The king was now dreſſed in a churchman's clothes

clothes like a deacon; and they put on him ſhoes of crimſon velvet, after the manner of a prelate. Then they added ſpurs with a point, but no rowel, and the ſword of Juſtice was drawn, bleſſed and delivered to the king, who put it into the ſcabbard, when the archbiſhop of Canterbury girded it about him. The crown of Saint Edward, which is arched over like a croſs, was next brought and bleſſed, and placed by the archbiſhop on the king's head. When maſs was over, the king left the church, and returned to the palace in the ſame ſtate as before. There was in the court-yard a fountain that conſtantly ran with white and red wine from various mouths. The king went firſt to his cloſet, and then returned to the hall to dinner.

At the firſt table ſat the king, at the ſecond the five great peers of England, at the third the principal citizens of London, at the fourth the new created knights, at the fifth all knights and ſquires of honour. The king was ſerved by the prince of Wales, who carried the ſword of Mercy, and on the oppoſite ſide, by the conſtable, who bore the ſword of Juſtice. At the bottom of the table was the earl of Weſtmoreland with the ſceptre. There were only at the king's table the two archbiſhops and ſeventeen biſhops.

When dinner was half over, a knight of the name of Dymock entered the hall completely armed, and mounted on a handſome ſteed, richly

barded with crimſon houſings. The knight was armed for wager of battle, and was preceded by another knight bearing his lance: he himſelf had his drawn ſword in one hand, and his naked dagger by his ſide. The knight preſented the king with a written paper, the contents of which were, that if any knight or gentleman ſhould dare to maintain that king Henry was not a lawful ſovereign, he was ready to offer him combat in the preſence of the king, when and where he ſhould be pleaſed to appoint. The king ordered this challenge to be proclaimed by heralds in ſix different parts of the town and the hall, to which no anſwer was made.

After king Henry had dined, and partaken of wine and ſpices in the hall, he retired to his private apartments, and all the company went to their homes. Thus paſſed the coronation day of king Henry, who remained that and the enſuing day at the palace of Weſtminſter. The earl of Saliſbury could not attend theſe feaſts, for he was in cloſe confinement under ſecure guards; and the king's miniſters, with many of the nobles and citizens of London, were anxious that he ſhould be publicly beheaded in Cheapſide. They ſaid that he was deſerving of every puniſhment, for having carried ſuch a meſſage from Richard of Bourdeaux to the French king and his court, and publicly proclaiming king Henry a falſe and wicked traitor, and that theſe were unpardonable crimes.

The

The king was naturally good tempered, and, far from inclining to put him to death, took compaſſion on him, and liſtened to the excuſes he made for what he had done, by throwing the blame on the four knights who had been beheaded, as he had only obeyed their orders. The council and Londoners would not hear his excuſes, and would have him executed, for they ſaid he had deſerved it. The earl of Saliſbury therefore continued in priſon, in great danger of his life.

Sir John Holland, earl of Huntingdon, who was governor of Calais, had been duly informed of all that had paſſed; how his brother, king Richard, had been arreſted and carried to the Tower of London, where he had been condemned to paſs his life, after reſigning his crown to Henry of Lancaſter, who was acknowledged king of England. The earl of Huntingdon, notwithſtanding the vexation the ſtate of his brother, king Richard, gave him, weighed well the times and circumſtances, and found that he alone could not pretend to withſtand the whole power of England. His counteſs, ſiſter-german to king Henry, told him, on his return from Calais to England,—'My lord, you muſt prudently lay aſide your anger, and not haſtily do any thing you may repent of, for my lord the king, my brother, can ſhew you much kindneſs. You ſee the whole kingdom is in his favour, and ſhould you commit yourſelf by any raſh act, you are ruined. I adviſe and entreat you to diſſemble your vexation, for king

Henry is as much your brother as king Richard. Attach yourſelf to him, and you will find him a good and faithful friend; for there has not been any king of England ſo rich as he is, and he may be of the greateſt ſervice to you and to your children.'

The earl of Huntingdon liſtened to what the counteſs ſaid, and followed her advice. He waited on his brother-in-law, king Henry, paid him many reſpects, and did his homage, promiſing fealty and ſervice: the king received him with much pleaſure. The earl, afterwards, with the ſupport of other friends, preſſed the king ſo ſtrongly in favour of the earl of Saliſbury, that his excuſes were heard and accepted: his miſſion to France was pardoned, and he regained the favour of the king and people.

CHAP. XXVIII.

INTELLIGENCE OF THE IMPRISONMENT OF KING RICHARD IS CARRIED TO FRANCE BY THE LADY OF COUCY.—KING CHARLES IS MUCH DISPLEASED THEREAT.—THE DUKE OF BOURBON ATTEMPTS IN VAIN TO REDUCE BOURDEAUX, AND OTHER TOWNS IN AQUITAINE, TO THE CROWN OF FRANCE.

THE lady of Coucy, on landing at Boulogne, haſtened her affairs, that ſhe might begin her journey to Paris; for there were already great murmurings in many parts of France at the events which were happening in England. Some imperfect intelligence had been carried of them thither by merchants of Bruges, but when the lady of Coucy, who had been attached to queen Iſabella, returned, the whole truth was known.

This lady, on her coming to Paris, went, as was natural, to the hôtel of her lord, who had arrived the preceding night. News of it was inſtantly carried to the king of France, who ſent directly for the lord de Coucy to come and bring him intelligence of king Richard and his queen Iſabella. On his entering the king's chamber, he aſked him the ſtate of England. The knight, not daring to conceal any thing, told him the full particulars he had learnt from his wife. The king

was much affected at the melancholy account he heard, for he knew the Engliſh to be determined, and hard to appeaſe; and, although he had been for a conſiderable time in a good ſtate of health, the rage he got into, on learning the events paſſing in England, brought back his frenzy, to the grief of his brother, uncles, and the barons of France, but they could not prevent it.

The duke of Burgundy ſaid,—'The marriage of king Richard with Iſabella was ill adviſed: I ſpoke of it when in agitation, but was not attended to. The Londoners never ſincerely liked king Richard, and all this miſery has been hatched by the duke of Gloceſter. We muſt learn how the Engliſh mean to proceed, and take our meaſures accordingly. Since they have impriſoned their king, they will put him to death (for they never loved him, becauſe he preferred peace to war), and crown the duke of Lancaſter. He will be forced to enter into ſuch engagements from his obligations to them, that whether he will or not, he muſt act as they ſhall pleaſe.'

The duke of Burgundy added, 'that it would be proper to know the inclinations of the inhabitants of Bourdeaux; for king Richard, having been born there, was greatly beloved by them, as well as by thoſe of Dax, Bayonne, and that whole country. It would not be amiſs (he ſaid) that the conſtable, lord Louis de Sancerre, ſhould have notice of what was propoſed, and that he ſhould advance toward the frontiers of Aquitaine, taking with

with him ſir Reginald d'Eſpagne, Barrois des Barres, and other barons and prelates, who knew how to negotiate; that his brother of Berry ſhould go into Poitou, and hover over the borders of Saintes, Blaze and Mirabel, in order that, if thoſe of Bourdeaux ſhould be inclined to enter into any treaty, they might be received; for we muſt gain them now, or never.'

Theſe propoſitions of the duke of Burgundy were heard attentively, and his advice followed. He underſtood the matter well, and what enſued proved it. The inhabitants of Bourdeaux, Dax and Bayonne were loſt in aſtoniſhment when they heard that their lord, king Richard, had been arreſted, and was confined in the Tower of London, his principal counſellors executed, and duke Henry of Lancaſter crowned king, and would not at firſt believe that ſuch melancholy events had happened in England: but, as the reports were confirmed daily by freſh intelligence, they were conſtrained to think them true. The gates of the three cities were cloſed, and no perſon whatever ſuffered to go out, from the ſorrow they were in, more particularly thoſe of Bourdeaux, for king Richard had been educated among them. They were ſincerely attached to him, and he always received them kindly when they waited on him, inclining naturally to comply with every requeſt they made him. On firſt hearing of his misfortune, they ſaid,—' Ah, Richard, gentle king! by God, you are the moſt honourable man in your realm. This miſchief

has

has been brewed for you by the Londoners, who never loved you, and their diſlike was ſtill increaſed by your alliance with France. This misfortune is too great for us to bear. Ah, king Richard! they have acknowledged you heir-ſovereign two and twenty years, and now they impriſon you, and will put you to death; for, ſince they have crowned the duke of Lancaſter king, that conſequence muſt follow.'

Such were the lamentations of the townſmen of Bourdeaux, and that whole country; and they continued ſo long the ſénéſchal of Bourdeaux, a valiant and able Engliſh knight, determined to ſend home intelligence of theſe complaints in Bourdeaux, Dax and Bayonne, and that they were on the point of ſurrendering themſelves to the king of France. Having written and ſealed his letters, he gave them to a truſty varlet, whom he embarked on board a veſſel; and, having a favourable wind, he was landed in Cornwall, and thence purſued his journey to London, where king Henry at that time was holding his parliament. Theſe letters were addreſſed generally to the king and citizens of London, and, being opened and read, the king and his parliament conſulted on them. The Londoners ſaid, like men no way diſmayed,—'Thoſe of Bourdeaux and Bayonne will never turn to the French: they cannot bear them nor ſuffer their tricks. They are free under us; but, if the French govern them, they will be taxed and taxed over again two or three times a-year. This they have not been accuſtomed to, and will find it hard to endure.

endure. Theſe three cities are beſide ſurrounded by the lands of great barons, who are and always have been loyal to England, ſuch as the lords de Pommiers, de Mucident, de Duras, de Landuras, de Copane, de Roſem, de Langurant, and many other barons and knights, who will inſtantly make war upon them: they cannot iſſue out of their gates without being made priſoners. Notwithſtanding, therefore, what the ſénéſchal of Bourdeaux writes to us, we do not fear they will ever turn to the French: let us, however, ſend them ſome man of valour and prudence, whom they eſteem, and who has governed them before: and we recommend ſir Thomas Percy.'

What they had adviſed was done, and ſir Thomas Percy was entreated by the king and citizens to undertake the voyage and the government of that country. Sir Thomas could not refuſe, and made his preparations.

It was now about Chriſtmas, when the winds are high, and the ſea rough: he made, therefore, his purveyances in Cornwall, at the port neareſt to Bourdeaux, and his equipment was two hundred men at arms and four hundred archers.

Sir Thomas was accompanied by his nephew, Hugh de Haſtings, Thomas Colleville, William Liſle, John de Grailly, baſtard-ſon to the captal de Buch, William Drayton, John d'Ambreticourt, and ſeveral others. He had likewiſe with him Robert biſhop of London *, and maſter Richard

* Robert Braybrook, dean of Sarum and lord chancellor.

Rowhall.

Rowhall. It was, however, the middle of March before they were able to embark.

Before theſe lords arrived at Bourdeaux, the duke of Bourbon came to the city of Agen, to treat with thoſe of Aquitaine, and made ſuch progreſs that the magiſtrates of Bourdeaux, Dax and Bayonne, were deputed to Agen. The duke received them moſt kindly, and was not ſparing of fine words and fair promiſes: he gave them to underſtand, that if they would turn to the French, and ſubmit themſelves to the obedience of the king of France, they ſhould have granted whatever they might aſk, and that the engagements they entered into ſhould be ſealed and recorded to laſt for ever; that whenever they might call on France, they ſhould be ſupported to the utmoſt of its power. He made them many other flattering promiſes; but they replied, they muſt return to their conſtituents, and lay before them his offers, and conſider how to act. They then left Agen and the duke of Bourbon, on their return home, where, on their arrival, they related all the duke had ſaid; but his offers came to nothing, for the inhabitants of theſe towns having conſidered their preſent ſituation, and that France was vexed by all ſorts of taxes, and every oppreſſive means to extort money, concluded they ſhould ſuffer ſimilar vexations if they ſubmitted themſelves to the French: 'It will be, therefore, better for us,' they ſaid, 'to remain ſteady to the Engliſh, who hold us frank and free. If the Londoners have

depoſed

depoſed king Richard, and crowned king Henry, what is that to us? We have ſtill a king; and we underſtand the biſhop of London and ſir Thomas Percy are on their way hither, who will fully inform us of the truth. We have more commerce with the Engliſh than the French, in wool, wines and cloth, and they are naturally more inclined to us. Let us, therefore, be cautious how we enter into any treaties of which we may hereafter repent.'

Thus were the negotiations of Bourdeaux, Dax and Bayonne, with the French, broken off. Sir Thomas Percy and the biſhop of London arrived ſafe in the harbour of Bourdeaux with their charge of men at arms and archers, to the great joy of ſome, and grief of others, who were of the party of the king of France. Theſe Engliſh lords lodged all together at the abbey of Saint Andrew, and, when they thought it was time, they remonſtrated with the commonalty of Bourdeaux on the ſtate of England, and the cauſe of their coming, with ſuch ſucceſs as they were contented with: Dax and Bayonne were alſo ſatisfied. Theſe cities and their dependancies remained ſteady to the Engliſh intereſt, and hard would it have been to have turned them to the French.

CHAP. XXIX.

THE COUNCIL OF FRANCE, BY PERMISSION OF KING HENRY, SEND OVER PERSONS TO VISIT ISABELLA, QUEEN TO RICHARD II.

THE council of France, perceiving the king so greatly affected at what had befallen his son-in-law king Richard, determined to send to England some lord of high rank to see and inquire into the situation of queen Isabella. The lord Charles d'Albreth and Charles de Hangers were nominated on this embassy, and made their preparations accordingly. On leaving Paris, they rode to Boulogne, where they remained and sent a herald to inform king Henry of their intention of coming to England; for, although there was a truce between the two kingdoms, they would not venture thither without his assurance of safety.

King Henry, who had not forgotten the kindness of the king of France when in exile, mentioned the matter to his council; and the herald was told, that it was very agreeable to the king and council that his lords and their company should come to England, and by the direct road to London, not quitting it without licence. The French herald returned to tell his lords at Boulogne what he had obtained. They were pleased with the answer, since they could not obtain more.

They

They immediately embarked themſelves and horſes in two veſſels, and, putting to ſea, arrived at Dover. On diſembarking and entering the town, they were met by one of the king's knights, who had been ordered thither to receive them. Having known him, when he accompanied the king in his baniſhment to Paris, they were all ſoon well acquainted. The lord Charles d'Albreth and the lord de Hangers were handſomely lodged in Dover, where they ſtaid until their horſes were landed. They continued their journey through Canterbury to Eltham, and wherever they ſtopped all their expenſes were paid by the king. The king and his council were at Eltham, and they were ſplendidly entertained in compliment to the king of France, to whom king Henry felt himſelf under obligations.

The lord d'Albreth explained to the king the cauſe of his coming, who replied, 'You will go to London, and within four days I will conſult my council, and you ſhall have an anſwer to your demands.' This ſatisfied them. They dined with the king, and, when it was over, remounted their horſes and rode to London, attended by the knight, who lodged them conveniently in London, and never quitted them.

The king of England came, as he had ſaid, to his palace of Weſtminſter, and the French lords were told of it, and to hold themſelves in readineſs to attend him, for they would be ſummoned. The king, having his council with him, and being prepared what anſwer to make, the French lords

were

were introduced. They ſaid, they had been ſent by the king and queen of France to ſee the young queen of England their daughter. The king anſwered,—'Gentlemen, we no way wiſh to prevent you ſeeing her; but you muſt promiſe, on your oaths, that neither yourſelves, nor any of your company ſpeak to her on what has lately paſſed in England, nor about Richard of Bourdeaux. Should you do otherwiſe, you will greatly offend us and the country, and put yourſelves in peril of your lives.'

The two knights replied, they would not infringe this regulation: all they wanted was to ſee and converſe with her, and then they would ſet out on their return. Not long after this, the earl of Northumberland carried them to Havering at the Bower, where the young queen reſided. She was attended by the ducheſs of Ireland, daughter to the lord de Coucy, the ducheſs of Gloceſter, her two daughters, and other ladies and damſels, as companions. The earl introduced the two knights to the queen, who converſed ſome time with them, aſking queſtions after her parents, the king and queen of France. They kept the promiſe they had made, by never mentioning the name of king Richard; and, when they had been with her a ſufficient time, took leave and returned to London. They made no long ſtay there, but, having packed up their things, and had their expenſes paid by the king's officers, they rode to Eltham, and dined with the king, who preſented them with ſome rich jewels. On taking leave,

the

the king parted with them amicably, and ſaid,—'Tell thoſe who have ſent you, that the queen ſhall never ſuffer the ſmalleſt harm, or any diſturbance, but keep up a ſtate and dignity becoming her birth and rank, and enjoy all her rights; for, young as ſhe is, ſhe ought not as yet to be made acquainted with the changes in this world.'

The knights were very happy to hear the king ſpeak thus; and then departed. They lay that night at Dartford, on the morrow at Oſpringe, the next at Canterbury, and then at Dover, the king's officers paying every expenſe of their journey. Having embarked with a favourable wind, they were landed at Boulogne, and thence proceeded to the king and queen at Paris, to whom they related what you have read.

We will now leave them, and ſpeak of the affairs of England.

CHAP. XXX.

THE EARLS OF HUNTINGDON AND SALISBURY, AND SOME OTHERS, HAVING FAILED TO MURDER TREACHEROUSLY KING HENRY OF LANCASTER, RISE IN ARMS AGAINST HIM.—THEY ARE DEFEATED AND BEHEADED, AND THEIR HEADS SENT TO THE KING.

IT was much disputed among the nobles, and in the principal towns, whether Richard of Bourdeaux was put to death, and nothing more was said about him, which was but what he deserved. King Henry declared, that in regard to the charges made against him he much pitied him, and would never consent to his death; that the prison wherein he was confined was sufficient punishment; and that he had engaged his word no other harm should be done him, which promise he was resolved to keep.

The enemies of king Richard replied,—'Sire, we see plainly that compassion alone moves you thus to say and act, but, in so doing, you are running great risks; for, so long as he shall be alive, notwithstanding the outward good humour and sincerity with which he resigned to you his crown, and that in general you have been acknowledged as king, and received the homage of all, there must remain many attached to him, who still preserve their affection, and will instantly rise against you

you whenever they perceive any hopes of delivering him from priſon. The king of France alſo, whoſe daughter he married, is ſo exaſperated at the late events, that he would willingly retaliate the firſt opportunity; and his power is great of itſelf, and muſt be increaſed by his connections in England.'

King Henry anſwered,—'Until I ſhall obſerve any thing contrary to the preſent ſtate of affairs, or that the king of France or other perſons act againſt me, I will not change my reſolution, but firmly keep the promiſe I have made.' This was the anſwer of king Henry, for which he narrowly eſcaped ſuffering, as you ſhall preſently hear.

The earl of Huntingdon, brother to king Richard, though married to the ſiſter of king Henry, could not forget his treatment of the late king, any more than the earl of Saliſbury. They had a ſecret meeting near to Oxford, on the means to deliver Richard of Bourdeaux from the Tower of London, deſtroy king Henry, and throw the country into confuſion. They reſolved to proclaim a tournament to be holden at Oxford, of twenty knights and ſquires, and invite the king to witneſs it privately. During the time the king was ſitting at dinner they were to ſlay him, (for they were to be provided with a ſufficiency of men at arms for their purpoſe) and to dreſs out in the royal robes a prieſt called Magdalen, who had been of king Richard's chapel, and was like him in countenance, and make the people to underſtand that he was delivered from priſon, and had reſumed

his ſtate. They were, inſtantly after the buſineſs was compleated, to ſend information of it to the king of France, that he might ſend them large ſuccours, under the command of the count de Saint Pol or any others.

They executed this plan, and proclaimed a grand tournament to be holden by twenty knights and as many ſquires at Oxford, who were to be accompanied by many ladies and damſels. They had gained to their party the young earl of Kent, nephew to the earl of Huntingdon, and the lord de Spencer, one of the moſt powerful barons in England. They expected the aid of the earl of Rutland, becauſe king Henry had deprived him of the conſtableſhip, but he failed them, and ſome ſay that by him their plot was diſcovered.

When all things had been ſettled for this feaſt, the earl of Huntingdon came to Windſor, where the king held his ſtate, and with much flattering, like one who, by ſoft words, thought to deceive, invited, with many marks of affection, the king to be preſent at it. Not ſuppoſing any treaſon was intended, he readily complied, and the earl of Huntingdon, much rejoiced, thanked and left the king. On going away, he ſaid to the canon de Roberſac *, 'Get thyſelf ready for our feaſt, and I promiſe thee if thou come, and we meet in the liſts, there ſhall be a ſharp conflict between us.' Sir John de Roberſac replied, 'By my faith, my lord, if the king come to your feaſt, it is neceſſary

* In the MSS. he is called Robeſſart and Robertſart.

that

that I accompany him.' Upon this, the earl ſhook him by the hand, and ſaid, 'Many thanks,' and paſſed on.

Several knights and ſquires, hearing of this tournament, made preparations to attend it, and all the armourers in London were fully employed. The king's miniſters were attentive to every circumſtance that was agitated, and they told him, 'Sire, you have no buſineſs to go to this tournament, and muſt not think of it, for we have heard whiſpers of plots that are very diſpleaſing to us, and in a few days we ſhall learn the whole.' The king believed what they had ſaid, and did not go to the tournament, nor any of his knights, and indeed very few of thoſe who were marked for death.

When the earls of Saliſbury, Huntingdon, Kent, and the lord de Spencer, found they had failed in their ſcheme of ſeizing the king, they held a council, and ſaid,—'We muſt go to Windſor and raiſe the country. We will dreſs Magdalen in royal robes, and make him ride with us, proclaiming that king Richard has eſcaped from priſon. All who ſee him will believe it true, and the report will gain ſuch credit that we ſhall deſtroy our enemies. This they executed, by collecting their whole party, amounting in all to about five hundred men, and, placing Magdalen in the center, dreſſed in royal ſtate, they rode towards Windſor, where king Henry kept his court.

God was very kind to the king, for he had early intelligence that the earls of Huntingdon,

Saliſbury, the young earl of Kent, and the lord de Spencer, were advancing towards Windſor, to ſeize and murder him; that they were in ſufficient force to take the caſtle, and had with them Magdalen, one of the prieſts of the chapel royal to Richard of Bourdeaux, dreſſed up as the late king; and that they gave it out every where that king Richard had eſcaped from priſon. Many of the country people believed it, ſaying, 'We have ſeen him,' miſtaking him for the king.

Thoſe who brought the intelligence ſaid to king Henry, 'Sire, depart hence inſtantly, and ride to London, for they will be here in a ſhort time.' He followed this counſel, and, mounting his horſe, ſet off with his attendants from Windſor, taking the road to London. He had not been long departed, before thoſe who intended to put him to death came to Windſor, and entered the caſtle-gate, for there were none to oppoſe them. They ſearched the apartments of the caſtle, and the houſes of the canons, in hopes of finding the king, but were diſappointed. On their failure, they were much enraged, and rode away to Colnbrook, where they lay, and forced many to join them by fair or foul means, ſaying that king Richard was in their company, which ſome believed, but others not.

King Henry, doubtful of the conſequences of this conſpiracy, haſtened to London, and, by a roundabout road, entered the Tower. Some ſharp words paſſed between him and Richard of Bourdeaux: he told him,—'I ſaved your life, and had great difficulty in doing it; and, in return,

you

you want to have me murdered by your brother, and my brother-in-law, and by the earls of Saliſbury and Kent, your nephew, with the lord de Spencer, but, if you have had any hand in this plot, it ſhall end badly for you.' Richard denied any knowledge of it, ſaying,—'As God may help me, and have compaſſion on my ſoul, I never before heard one word of this plot. I never looked for any change in my ſituation, for I am perfectly contented with my preſent ſtate.' Nothing more paſſed. The king ſent for the mayor of London and his particular friends, to whom he related every thing he knew or had heard of this conſpiracy. They were greatly ſurpriſed on hearing it, and ſaid,—Sire, you muſt ſummon your forces, and march inſtantly againſt them, before they increaſe more in numbers. We have made you king, and king you ſhall be, in ſpite of all that envy and diſcontent may do againſt you.'

The king loſt no time in employing clerks and meſſengers to write and carry letters to the knights of his realm. He wrote himſelf to his conſtable, the earl of Northumberland, to his marſhal, the earl of Weſtmoreland, and to other great barons in Eſſex and Lincoln, from whom he expected aſſiſtance. All who received them made haſte to join the king.

The earls of Huntingdon and Saliſbury, and their party, determined to march to London, for they imagined there muſt be ſome of the citizens attached to king Richard, who would give them ſupport. In conſequence, they left Colnbrook,

and advanced to Brentford, ſeven miles from London, where they lay. Not one of the Londoners joined them, but ſhut themſelves up in their town. When they ſaw this, they marched away towards Saint Albans, a large town, and there ſtaid one day. On the morrow, they went to Berk-hempſtead. They continued marching through different parts, publiſhing every where that Magdalen was king Richard, and came to a ſtrong town called Sonceſtre*, which had a bailiff attached to king Henry for the guard of the town and defence of the adjacent parts. The three earls and lord de Spencer took up their lodgings in Cirenceſter, and were that night left quiet, for the bailiff, being a valiant and prudent man, did not think he was ſtrong enough to combat them, and diſſembled his thoughts as well as he could.

The next morning the earl of Saliſbury and lord de Spencer left the earl of Huntingdon and his nephew, ſaying they would advance farther into the country to gain friends, and would viſit the lord of Berkeley. They rode down Severn ſide, but were badly adviſed thus to ſeparate, for both parties were weakened by it. The earl of Huntingdon remained in Cirenceſter, and attempted to tamper with the bailiff and townſmen. He told them that the Londoners had delivered king Richard out of priſon, and within two days he would be there. The bailiff, having collected a large force, ſaid that not one word was true; for that he had juſt heard the contrary from king Henry and the citizens of London

* Sonceſtre,—Cirenceſter, pronounced Ciçeter.

to

to assure him of the truth, and that he should act conformably to the orders he had received. The earl of Huntingdon, hearing this, changed colour from disappointment. Finding he could not gain his end, he returned to his lodgings, armed himself, and made his men do the same, determining to conquer these ale-drinkers by force, and set fire to their town as an example, and to terrify the country.

The bailiff was not idle in collecting all the men he could: they amounted, archers and all, to two thousand men, which he draw up in the market-place, when the force of the earls of Huntingdon and Kent were not three hundred. Notwithstanding this inequality, they made ready to begin the battle, and the archers attacked each other, so that several were wounded. The bailiff and his men, who were very numerous, charged the rebels vigorously, without sparing any one, for he had the king's special orders to take the leaders, dead or alive. The earl's party were forced to retire within their lodgings; and the house wherein the two earls were, the bailiff's men surrounded and conquered.

Many were killed, and more wounded. The earl of Huntingdon defended himself gallantly, like a valiant man at arms as he was; but the numbers against him were too great to withstand; and he was slain fighting, as was the young earl of Kent, who was much lamented by several knights in England and other countries. He was young and handsome, and had very unwillingly taken part in this conspiracy; but his uncle and the earl of Salisbury had forced him into it.

The

The men of Cirenceſter, who were wroth againſt them, cut off their heads, and ſent them in two paniers, as fiſh is carried, by a varlet on horſeback, to rejoice the king and the Londoners. A ſimilar fate befel the earl of Saliſbury and lord de Spencer: they were made priſoners by the knights and ſquires the king had ſent againſt them, who had them beheaded, and ſent their heads to London. Great numbers of their partiſans, and knights and ſquires who had accompanied them, were executed, after which the country remained in peace.

The king of France, his brother, uncles and council, learning that during Eaſter of the year 1400, the Engliſh had ſent men at arms and archers to Calais, Guiſnes, and the neighbouring caſtles, and were providing theſe places with many ſtores, iſſued a ſummons for all knights and ſquires to prepare themſelves to march whitherſoever they might be ordered, and ſpecially provided for the frontier of Boulogne and the ſea-ſhore.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

ON THE DEATH OF JOHN OF MONTFORT, DUKE OF BRITTANY, THE BRETONS UNDERTAKE THE WARDSHIP OF THE YOUNG DUKE, AND TO BE FRIENDLY TO FRANCE.—THE FRENCH KING, DISTRUSTING THE SENTIMENTS OF THE NEW REIGN IN ENGLAND, MAKES PROVISION AGAINST ANY SUDDEN CHANGE.

AT this period, John duke of Brittany departed this life, leaving iſſue two ſons and a daughter. The eldeſt ſon had been betrothed to the ſecond daughter of the king of France: he could not have the eldeſt, as ſhe was married to the king of England, as has been related. She had indeed been promiſed him, and treaties entered into on the ſubject at Tours in Touraine; but the king was adviſed to break it off, to marry her more nobly and richly in England. Many of the French lords, however, ſaid, that it would never turn out well thus to break through ſolemn engagements.

On the death of the duke of Brittany, it was determined in the council, that the duke of Orleans ſhould advance to the borders of Brittany with a body of men at arms, to confer with the nobles and chiefs of the principal towns of the duchy, to learn their intentions reſpecting the young

young duke, and to demand he ſhould be delivered up to him to carry to the court of France.

The duke of Orleans, in conſequence of this reſolution, ſummoned a conſiderable number of men at arms, and marched them to Pontorſon, where he halted, and ſignified his arrival to the barons of Brittany. The prelates, nobles, and chief magiſtrates of the great towns, aſſembled at Pontorſon, when the duke of Orleans made them the above requeſt.

They were prepared with an anſwer, and replied they would be guardians to their young duke [and educate him in their own country until he ſhould be of a proper age; that then they would bring him to France, that he might do his homage to the king, as was his duty; that, for the due performance of this, they were willing to enter into bonds, ſubjecting themſelves to the loſs of their lands ſhould they break the engagement.]

The duke of Orleans, finding that he could not gain more, took an obligation from the principal barons, who had their duke in ward, to deliver him up to the king of France when he ſhould be of a proper age.

Theſe obligations being written and ſealed, the duke of Orleans had them in charge, and, taking leave of the barons, departed from Pontorſon, on his return to Paris, and related to the king, his brother, all that had paſſed.

It was known in England, that the French, by their king's command, had ſtrongly reinforced, and re-victualled all the towns, caſtles and forts in Picardy,

Picardy, and on the borders of the Boulonois, and had cloſed the river Somme, ſo that no merchandiſe nor corn could come to England, nor paſs Abbeville. The merchants of the two countries who were uſed freely to viſit each, were now afraid of doing ſo; and thoſe on the borders of Calais and Guiſnes were ruined, although there were not any hoſtilities commenced, for orders to that effect had not been given.

The king of England was adviſed by his council to be on his guard; for the French, they ſaid, were making great preparations of ſhips at Harfleur, and plainly ſhewed they were inclined for war. The count de Saint Pol and the lord Charles d'Albreth were appointed commanders, and it was to be ſuppoſed, that if the earls of Huntingdon and Saliſbury were alive, they would have croſſed the ſea, for they had many connections in England. They added, 'Sire, ſo long as Richard of Bourdeaux lives, the country will never have peace.'

'I believe what you ſay may be true,' replied the king; 'but, with regard to me, I will never put him to death. I have given him my word, that no bodily harm ſhall befal him; and I will keep my promiſe, until it ſhall appear that he enters into any plots againſt me.' 'Sire,' anſwered the knights, 'his death would be more to your advantage than his life; for, ſo long as the French know he is alive, they will exert themſelves to make war againſt you, in the hope of re-placing

re-placing him on the throne, on account of his having married the daughter of their king.'

The king of England made no reply, but, leaving them in converſation, went to his falconers, and, placing a falcon on his wriſt, forgot all in feeding him.

CHAP. XXXII.

THE DEATH OF KING RICHARD.—THE TRUCES ARE RENEWED AND KEPT BETWEEN FRANCE AND ENGLAND.—THE EARL MARSHAL, WHO HAD BEEN BANISHED ENGLAND, DIES AT VENICE.

IT was not long after this that a true report was current in London of the death of Richard of Bourdeaux. I could not learn the particulars of it, nor how it happened, the day I wrote theſe chronicles. Richard of Bourdeaux, when dead, was placed on a litter covered with black, and a canopy of the ſame. Four black horſes were harneſſed to it, and two varlets in mourning conducted the litter, followed by four knights dreſſed alſo in mourning. Thus they left the Tower of London, where he had died, and paraded the ſtreets at a foot's pace until they came to Cheapſide, which is the greateſt thoroughfare in the city, and there they halted for upwards of two hours. More than twenty thouſand perſons, of both ſexes,

ſexes, came to ſee the king, who lay in the litter, his head on a black cuſhion, and his face uncovered.

Some pitied him, when they ſaw him in this ſtate, but others did not, ſaying he had for a long time deſerved death. Now conſider, ye kings, lords, dukes, prelates, and earls, how very changeable the fortunes of this world are. This king Richard reigned twenty-two years in great proſperity, and with much ſplendour; for there never was a king of England who expended ſuch ſums, by more than one hundred thouſand florins, as king Richard did in keeping up his ſtate, and his houſehold eſtabliſhments. I, John Froiſſart, canon and treaſurer of Chimay, know it well, for I witneſſed and examined it, during my reſidence with him, for a quarter of a year. He made me good cheer, becauſe in my youth I had been ſecretary to king Edward his grandfather, and the lady Philippa of Hainault, queen of England. When I took my leave of him at Windſor, he preſented me, by one of his knights called ſir John Golofre, a ſilver gilt goblet, weighing full two marcs, filled with one hundred nobles, which were then of ſervice to me, and will be ſo as long as I live. I am bound to pray to God for him, and ſorry am I to write of his death; but, as I have dictated and augmented this hiſtory to the utmoſt of my power, it became neceſſary to mention it, that what became of him might be known.

I ſaw

I ſaw two ſtrange things in my time, though widely different. I was ſitting at dinner in the city of Bourdeaux when king Richard was born: it was on a Wedneſday, on the point of ten o'clock. At that hour ſir Richard de Pontchardon, then marſhal of Aquitaine, came to me and ſaid,—'Froiſſart, write, that it may be remembered, my lady, the princeſs, is brought to bed of a fine ſon: he is born on twelfth day, the ſon of a king's ſon, and ſhall be king himſelf.' The gallant knight foretold the truth, for he was king of England twenty-two years; but he did not foreſee what was to be the concluſion of his life. When king Richard was born, his father was in Galicia, which don Pedro had given him to conquer: a curious thing happened, on my firſt going to England, which I have much thought on ſince. I was in the ſervice of queen Philippa, and, when ſhe accompanied king Edward and the royal family, to take leave of the prince and princeſs of Wales, at Berk-hempſtead, on their departure for Aquitaine, I heard an ancient knight, in converſation with ſome ladies, ſay,—'We have a book called Bruſt, that declares neither the prince of Wales, dukes of Clarence, York, nor Gloceſter, will be kings of England, but the deſcendants of the duke of Lancaſter.' Now I, the author of this hiſtory ſay, that, conſidering all things, theſe two knights, ſir Richard de Pontchardon, and ſir Bar the Comers de Brulls, in what they ſaid, were both in the right, for all the world ſaw Richard

reign

reign for twenty-two years in England, and the crown then fall to the houſe of Lancaſter.

King Henry would never have been king, on the conditions you have heard, if his couſin, Richard, had treated him in the friendly manner he ought to have done. The Londoners took his part for the wrongs the king had done him and his children, whom they much compaſſionated.

When the funeral car of king Richard had remained in Cheapſide two hours, it was conducted forward, in the ſame order as before, out of the town. The four knights then mounted their horſes, which were waiting for them, and continued their journey with the body until they came to a village, where there is a royal manſion, called Langley, thirty miles from London. There king Richard was interred: God pardon his ſins, and have mercy on his ſoul!

News was ſpread abroad that king Richard was dead. This had been expected ſome time; for it was well known he would never come out of the Tower alive. His death was concealed from his queen, as orders had been given for that purpoſe, which were prudently obeyed for a conſiderable time. All theſe tranſactions were perfectly well known in France; and ſuch knights and ſquires as wiſhed for war, looked every moment for orders to attack the frontiers. The councils, however, of both kingdoms, thought it would be for the advantage of the two countries that the truces ſhould be renewed, and for this end different negotiators went to the neighbourhood of Calais.

The king of France was not in good health, nor ever had been ſince he heard of the misfortunes of his ſon-in-law, Richard; and his diſorder was greatly increaſed when he was told of his death.

The duke of Burgundy took the chief government of the realm: he came to Saint Omer and Bourbourg, where were the duke of Bourbon, the lord Charles d'Albreth, ſir Charles de Hangiers, ſir John de Châteaumorant, and ſuch prelates as the patriarch of Jeruſalem, the biſhops of Paris and Beauvais. On the part of England were the earls of Northumberland, Rutland and Devonſhire, ſir Henry Percy, ſon to the earl of Northumberland, ſir Evan Fitzwarren, and the biſhops of Wincheſter and Ely.

The French propoſed having the queen of England delivered to them, but the Engliſh would not liſten to it, ſaying they would gladly have her reſide in England on her dower, and that, if ſhe had loſt her huſband, they would provide her another, who ſhould be young and handſome, and whom ſhe would love. Richard of Bourdeaux was too old for her, and the perſon they ſhould offer was ſuitable in every reſpect, being no other than the prince of Wales, eldeſt ſon to king Henry.

The French would not agree to this, for they dared not come to any final concluſion in this matter without the conſent of the king her father. He was now in a very bad ſtate, and much weakened in his conſtitution, for there had not been

been found any phyſician who could conquer his diſorder. The treaty was therefore laid aſide, and the ſubject of the truce canvaſſed. It was ſo well conducted, that it was reſolved to continue it to the original term of thirty years, four of which were already gone, and it was now to laſt for twenty-ſix years. This was put into writing, and ſigned and ſealed by thoſe who had full powers ſo to do from the two kings.

When this was done, they ſeparated, and each party returned home.

I have not mentioned what became of the earl marſhal, by whom all theſe late misfortunes originated, but I will now tell you. He was reſiding in Venice when he firſt heard that Henry of Lancaſter was king of England, and king Richard dead, and took this news ſo grievouſly to heart that he fell ſick, was put to bed, became frantic and died.

Such were the misfortunes that befel the greateſt lords in England.

CHAP. XXXIII.

FRANCE PRESERVES A NEUTRALITY BETWEEN THE POPES OF ROME AND AVIGNON.—THE ELECTION OF THE EMPEROR ROBERT.

IN the year of grace 1399, pope Benedict, whom the French had formerly ſupported, was depoſed, as well likewiſe the emperor of Germany for his wicked deeds. The electors of the empire, and all the great barons of Germany roſe againſt him, and ſent him to Bohemia, of which country he was king. They elected emperor in his ſtead a valiant and prudent man, called Robert, duke of Heidelberg, who came to Cologne, and was there crowned with the crown of Germany; for thoſe of Aix would not admit him within their town, nor the duke of Gueldres ſubmit himſelf to his obedience, which angered him much.

The new emperor promiſed to reſtore union to the church. In the mean time, the king of France negotiated with the Liege-men, who were determined for the Roman pope, and managed ſo well, through ſir Baldwin de Mont-jardin (who governed in part the biſhoprick of Liege, and was a knight of the king's chamber), that the whole country complied with the deſire of the French king, and became neuter.

The Liege-men ſent orders to thoſe of their clergy who were at Rome, that if they did not return

return home by a fixed day, they ſhould be deprived of their benefices. On hearing this, they all came back to Liege; and pope Boniface, who loſt much by this order, ſent a legate to Germany to preach to the Liege men, and endeavour to make them return to their former creed. The legate dared not advance farther than Cologne, but ſent his inſtructions and letters to Liege. They read them, and told the meſſenger,—'Do not return hither again on the buſineſs thou art now come upon, unleſs thou ſhalt wiſh to be drowned; for as many meſſengers as ſhall be ſent us, ſo many will we throw into the Meuſe.'

THE END.

INDEX.

*** *The small numeral letters refer to the introductory matter, the large roman numerals denote the volumes, and the figures the pages.*

A.

ABBVILLE, the town of, taken by the French forces under sir Hugh de Châtillon, Vol. III. p. 397.

Aberdeen, the Bishop of, taken prisoner by the English at the battle of Nevil's Cross, II. 196.

Achery sur Aine, the town of, in Picardy, taken by the English under sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt, III. 15.

Atchievement at arms, between the lord de la Rochfoucault and sir William de Montferrant, at Bourdeaux, VIII. 140.

Acquigny, the castle of, taken by the lord de la Riviere, III. 167.

Acquitaine, the country of, conquered from the Engliſh by the earl of Liſle, I. 219.—Given to the duke of Lancaſter by Richard II. and his council, XI. 119.

Acquitaine, the towns of, ſend ambaſſadors to England to remonſtrate againſt the gift made of the duchy to the duke of Lancaſter, XI. 134.—Succeeded in the object of their remonſtrance, 151.

Additions to the printed copies of Froiſſart's Chronicles, from MSS. in the Hafod Library, II. 249. IV. 233, *note*. V. 239, 362, *note*. 365, *note*. 375. X. 190, 320. XII. 42.

Advertiſement to the firſt edition of the Chronicles, I. v.

——————— to the ſecond edition, I. vii.

Africa, the town of, beſieged by the duke of Bourbon, X. 195.—The ſiege abandoned, 240.

Agace, Gobin, conducts the Engliſh army under king Edward III. to a ford on the Lomme at Blanchetaque, previous to the battle of Crecy, II. 152.

Agen, the town of, taken by the French army under the duke of Anjou, IV. 75.

Aide, the nature of the tax ſo called, explained, II. 376. *note*.

Aiguillon, the caſtle of, in Gaſcony, ſurrenders to the earl of Derby, II. 79.—Beſieged by the

the duke of Normandy, 115.—The ſiege abandoned by order of the king of France, 176.—Taken by the French, under the duke of Anjou, IV. 75.

Aire, the town of, in Artois, beſieged by the Flemings in the intereſt of the king of England, II. 215.

Albret, ſir Perducas d', takes offence at the conduct of the prince of Wales, III. 264.—Marries the lady Iſabella of Bourbon, 341.—Complains to the king of France of a tax the prince of Wales was about to impoſe upon the lands of himſelf and other lords of Gaſcony, 343..—Returns to the intereſt of the prince of Wales, 434.—Receives the inveſtiture of the lands of Chaumont, VI. 137.—His death, 138.

Albret, the lord Charles d', obtains permiſſion from Charles VI. to quarter the fleurs de lis of France alternately with his own arms, X. 60.

Alençon, the earl of, ſlain at the battle of Crecy, II. 168.

Alençon, earl Peter d', returns to France from England, where he had been as one of the hoſtages for king John, III. 383.

Alexandria, the town of, in Lombardy, beſieged by the count d'Armagnac, X. 267.—The ſieged raiſed, 276.

Aljubarota, the battle of, between the armies of Spain and Portugal, VII. 277, 404.

Alois, the caſtle of, in Auvergne, taken by Amerigot Marcel, V. 77.

St. Amand, the town of, taken by the earl of Hainault, I. 237.

Ambreticourt, ſir Euſtace d', hoſpitably receives queen Iſabella of England, after ſhe had fled from Paris, I. 19.—Taken priſoner at the battle of Poitiers, II. 320.—Reſcued by his own men, 326.—Defeated and taken priſoner at the battle of Nogent ſur Seine, 452.—Obtains his freedom and takes ſeveral towns in Champagne, 461.—Takes the town of Achery ſur Aine, in Picardy, III. 15.—Commits great devaſtations in Picardy, &c. 32.—Made priſoner and ranſomed in Limouſin, IV. 116.—Dies at Carentan, in Normandy, 117.

Ambreticourt, ſir John d', on his return from Galicia, goes to Paris, to accompliſh a deed of arms, IX. 27.

Amurat, the Turkiſh commander, defeated by the Hungarians, VII. 346.—Invades Hungary a ſecond time, X. 354.

Anchin, Peter d', takes the town of Ortingas, VII. 135.—Sells it for 8000 francs, 137.

Andreghen, the caſtle of, belonging to the earl of Flanders, burnt and pillaged by the Whitehoods, under John Lyon, V. 119.

Andreghen, ſir Arnold d', captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 322.—Adviſes Henry, king of Caſtille, not to hazard a battle with the prince of Wales, III. 295.—Captured at the battle of Navarete, 313.

St. Andrews, the biſhop of, taken priſoner at the battle of Nevil's Croſs, II. 196.

Anghein, the lord d', takes the town of Grammont, in Flanders, for the earl, VI. 3.—Slain before Ghent, 6.

Angle, ſir Guiſcard d', appointed marſhal of Guienne, III. 102.—Travels through France to Acquitaine in diſguiſe, 394.—Created a knight of the garter, IV. 152.—Captured by the Spaniards before La Rochelle, 161.—Ranſomed, 253.—Appointed tutor to Richard the Second, IV. 283.—Dies in London, V. 179, 374.

Angoulême, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 93.—By the duke of Normandy, 114.—Surrenders a ſecond time to the French, IV. 190.

Anjou, the duke of, ſent to the aſſiſtance of the Bretons in the intereſt of the lord Charles of Blois, III. 119.—Summons his vaſſals to make war on the prince of Wales in Acquitaine, 400.—Heads an army againſt Guienne, IV. 73.—Breaks up his expedition, 92.—Leads an army into Upper Gaſcony, 249.—Takes the town of Lourde, 250.—Makes a truce with the duke of Lancaſter

Lancaſter, 253.—Takes ſeveral places in Upper Gaſcony, 257.—Undertakes an expedition againſt the Engliſh in the Bourdelois, 304.—Takes the town of Bergerac, 307.—Takes ſeveral other places in Gaſcony, 321 et ſeq.—Returns to Toulouſe, 332.—Collects another army againſt the Engliſh in Gaſcony, 380.—Makes war on Brittany, V. 72.—Receives the territories of the queen of Naples as a gift from pope Clement, 91.—Seizes the jewels of his brother king Charles the Fifth, 224.—Seizes the government of France as regent during the minority of Charles the Sixth, 225.—Makes preparations to march for Naples, VI. 19.—Sets out for Italy, 36.—Enters Naples, 40.—Dies at a caſtle near Naples, 367.—Takes Malvoiſin, VII. 152*.

* It may not be improper to obſerve here, once for all, upon a circumſtance which will doubtleſs excite the ſurpriſe of the reader, that in this inſtance, as well as ſeveral others in different parts of the Index, events are inſerted ſubſequently to the account of the death of the agent. This has ariſen unavoidably from the manner in which Froiſſart compoſed his hiſtory, and from new and additional information communicated to him many years after he had completed the former part of his work, and had mentioned the death of the perſon to whom ſuch information related. But it was conſidered that it would have been a vain and fruitleſs attempt to rectify this imperfection; it has, therefore, been deemed adviſeable to leave things as they were found, and to inſert the events ſelected for the Index in the order and rotation in which they appear noticed by the Author himſelf. *R.*

—Beſieges Lourde, but being unable to take the caſtle, he burns the town and retreats, 178.

Anjou, madame d', queen of Naples, adviſed, on the death of her huſband, the duke of Anjou, to ſolicit the pope for poſſeſſion of Provence, VI. 367.—Urges her claims to this country, VII. 1.—Makes her public entry into Paris in company with her ſon Lewis of Anjou, king of Sicily, &c. IX. 187.—Inſtitutes a law-ſuit in the courts of Paris againſt ſir Peter Craon, 191.—Obtains judgment againſt him, 223.

Anjou, Lewis of, ſon of the duke of Anjou, makes his public entry into Paris as king of Sicily, &c. IX. 187.—Sets out from Avignon to Arragon, X. 3.—Marries the daughter of the king of Arragon, 4.—Embarks with his young bride for Sicily, 5.

Anne, of Bohemia, ſets out for England, VI. 30.—Married to Richard the Second, 33.—Her death, XI. 121.

Annequin, ſir Baldwin d', captured by ſir Bartholomew Burgherſt, III. 13.

Apologue, delivered to the cardinals reſpecting the papacy, by friar John de la Rochetaillade, VII. 353.

Appearances, wonderful, in the heavens, ſeen by the army of Philip von Artaveld on the eve of the battle of Roſebecque, VI. 210.

Ardembourg, the town of, taken by the men of Ghent, VI. 257.—Narrowly eſcapes being taken a ſecond time by them, VII. 19.

Ardres, the town of, in Picardy, attacked ineffectually by the French forces, III. 425.—Surrenders to the duke of Burgundy, IV. 288.

Ardvick, the caſtle of, in Picardy, taken by the duke of Burgundy, IV. 288.

Armagnac, the lord of, complains to the king of France of a tax the prince of Wales was about to impoſe upon the lands of himſelf and other lords of Gaſcony, III. 343.

Armagnac, the count d', obtains the remiſſion of ſixty thouſand francs of his ranſom of the count de Foix, at the interceſſion of the princeſs of Wales, VII. 128.—Endeavours to prevail on the free companies to ſell their forts, IX. 41.—Is thwarted by the count de Foix, 45.—Leads an army into Lombardy againſt the duke of Milan, X. 260.—Applies to ſir John Hawkwood for his aſſiſtance, 264.—Beſieges Alexandria, 267.—His death, 275.

Armagnac, ſir Bernard d', does homage to the king of France, X. 358.

Arnaut, ſir Peter, appointed governor of Lourde, in Gaſcony, VII. 129.—Murdered by the count de Foix, 177.

Arragon, the king of, promiſes to aſſiſt king Henry of Caſtille againſt don Pedro, and the

the prince of Wales, III. 245.—His death, VIII. 127.

Arras, a conference held there with the view of bringing about a peace between the kings of France and England, I. 250.

Artaveld, Jacob von, a citizen of Ghent, governs all Flanders, I. 116.—Sends ambaſſadors to Edward the Third, to invite him over, 126.—Joins the earl of Hainault with a large army before Thin l'Eveque, 203.—Attempts to diſinherit the earl of Flanders, and to give the country to the king of England, II. 96.—Murdered at Ghent, 101.

Artaveld, Philip von, ſon of the above, appointed governor of Ghent, V. 322.—Leads the men of Ghent to attack the earl of Flanders at Bruges, VI. 89.—Defeats the earl, and takes Bruges, 98.—Returns to Ghent in great ſtate, 114.—Beſieges Oudenarde, 117.—Writes to the king of France to ſolicit his interference to make peace between the country of Flanders and the earl, 133.—His letters treated with contempt, 134.—Impriſons a meſſenger from the king of France, 147.—His anſwer to the letters he had brought him, 148.—Takes meaſures to guard the paſſes of the country againſt the army of the king of France, VI. 159.—After the defeat of Peter du Bois, collects a force to oppoſe the king of

of France in perſon, 206.—Defeated and ſlain at the battle of Roſebecque, 225.

Artois, lord Charles d', captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 335.

Artois, lord John d', captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 335.

Artois, lord Philip d', marries the lady Mary of Berry, and is appointed conſtable of France, X. 87.—Taken priſoner at the battle of Nicopoli in Turkey, XI. 301.—Dies at Hautloge, in the ſame country, 374.

Artois, the lord Robert d', befriends Iſabella, queen of Edward the Second, after ſhe had been commanded to quit France, I. 18.—Is himſelf baniſhed by king Philip, 93.—Takes refuge in England, and is created earl of Richmond, 97.—Sent into Brittany to aid the counteſs of Montford againſt the lord Charles of Blois, II. 20.—Engages the lord Lewis of Spain at ſea, 23.—Lands in Brittany, 25.—Takes the town of Vannes, 28.—Is beſieged in it, 30.—Killed, 31.

Arundel, the earl of, beſieged with king Edward the Second in Briſtol by the queen's forces, I. 27.—Condemned to death and beheaded, 29.

Arundel, Richard earl of, defeats the Flemiſh fleet under ſir John le Bucq, VIII. 158.—Appointed to the command of a naval expedition, IX. 151.—Lands near la Rochelle,

chelle, 196.—Defeats the Rochellers in a ſkirmiſh, 201.—Lands in Normandy, and over-runs the country, 332.—Returns to Southampton, 333.—Joins the duke of Gloceſter in his attempts to excite diſturbances in England, XI. 349.—Committed to the Tower, XII. 25.—Beheaded, 29.

Arundel, ſir John, heads an armament againſt France, and lands at Cherbourg, V. 1.—Sent with a force to the aſſiſtance of the duke of Brittany, 150.—Periſhes at ſea, 151.

Asai, Guy d', ſteward, of Toulouſe, endeavours to prevent the free companies from entering France, on their return from Spain, III. 251.—Is defeated by them before Montaubon, and made priſoner, 258.

Assembly, of the lords of England and France, held at Amiens, to treat of a peace between the two countries, X. 344.—Breaks up without having accompliſhed the object of its meeting, 355.

——— held at Rheims by the king of France and the emperor of Germany, to conſult on meaſures to put an end to the ſchiſm in the church, XII. 35.

Assueton, ſir John, a Scots knight, performs a gallant deed of arms at Noyon, IV. 86.

Athenis, the town of, taken from the Engliſh by the duke of Normandy, II. 111.

Athens, the duke of, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 331.

Atremen, Francis, a citizen of Ghent, ſurpriſes the town of Oudenarde, VI. 319.—Defeats a party of the French at Ardembourg, 386.—Makes an unſucceſsful attempt to take Ardembourg, VII. 19.—Murdered at Ghent, VIII. 36.

Attigny, the town of, in Champagne, taken by ſir Euſtace d'Ambreticourt, II. 461.

Aubenton, the town of, taken by the earl of Hainault, I. 177.

Auberoche, the town of, in Perigord, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 66.—Retaken by th duke of Anjou, IV. 323.

Aubriot, Hugh, liberated by the inſurgents at Paris, VI. 15.

Audley, ſir James, handſomely rewarded by the prince of Wales for his conduct at the battle of Poitiers, II. 341.—His generoſity to his ſquires, 344.—His death, III. 458.

Audley, ſir Peter, makes an ineffectual attempt to take the town of Chalons, II. 439.

Avesbury, Robert of, his hiſtory of the progreſs of Edward the Third in Normandy, quoted, II. 139, *note*.

Aulnay, the town of, in Poitou, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 181.

Auray, the caſtle of, in Brittany, taken by the lord Charles of Blois, I. 314.—Taken by the lord John de Montford, III. 202.—Surrenders to the French forces in the intereſt of Charles of Blois, IV. 296.

Auray, the battle of, between the lord John de Montford and the lord Charles of Blois, III. 188.

Auſtarde, Wantaire, commands a troop of the free companies at Roullebois, III. 128.

Auterme, Roger d', bailiff of Ghent, murdered by the Whitehoods, V. 114.

Auterme, Oliver d', revenges himſelf on the men of Ghent for the murder of his brother, V. 161.—Baniſhed from Flanders, 167.

Auvergne, the city of, taken by the free companies under ſir Seguin de Batefol, III. 92.

Auxene, the earl of, ſlain at the battle of Crecy, II. 168.

Auxene, the earl of, captured at the battle of Auray, III. 192.—Impriſoned on account of his alliance with don Henry of Caſtille, 328.

Aymery, ſir John, captured by the French, VII. 220.—Slain at Sancerre, 224.

B.

Bacon, a robber in Languedoc, takes the caſtle of Cobourne, in Limoſin, and does other miſchief, II. 235.

Bailleul, ſir William de, defeated in a ſkirmiſh at Pont a Treſſin, I. 230.

Bajazet, the ſultan, raiſes a large force to oppoſe the king of Hungary and John of Burgundy, who had invaded Turkey, XI. 248.—Marches for Nicopoli, 293.—Defeats the combined Chriſtian armies with great ſlaughter, 297.—Puts his priſoners, with very few exceptions, to death, 307.—Diſbands his army, 319.—A ſingular inſtance of his juſtice, 378.

Ball, John, a refractory prieſt, excites the people of Kent to rebellion, V. 333 —Enters London at their head, 347.—Taken and beheaded, 364.

Balon, the caſtle of, in Auvergne, taken by Amerigot Marcel, V. 78.

Barfleur, the town of, in Normandy, taken by Edward the Third, II. 127.

Barres, ſir Barrois de, (with other French knights) goes to the aſſiſtance of the king of Caſtille, VIII. 7.—Enters Corunna to defend it againſt

againſt the duke of Lancaſter, 16.—Acquires great wealth by deſtroying the country before the Engliſh army, 29.

St. Basile, the caſtle of, in Gaſcony, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 76.—Retaken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 323.

Batefol, ſir Seguin de, choſen commander of a band of freebooters in Gaſcony, III. 74.—Takes the city of Auvergne, 92.

Battle, the noted, between thirty Bretons and thirty Engliſh, II. 327, *note*.

Bayeux, the city of, taken by the French under the lord de Coucy, IV. 376.

Bayonne, the town of, beſieged by the king of Caſtille, IV. 381.—Taken by the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 87.

Bearn, Peter de, his ſtrange dreams, VII. 207.

Bearnois, Perrot le, captain of ſome free companies, takes the town of Montferrant, in Auvergne, by ſtratagem, IX. 118.—Abandons it, and retires to his forts, 124.—Takes the field by order of the earl of Arundel, 195.—Over-runs the country of Berry, 204.

Beaufort, the cardinal de, elected pope, under the name of Gregory the Eleventh, IV. 115.

Beaulieu, William de, captured by the Engliſh garriſon of Cherbourg, V. 74.

Beaumanoir, the lord of, endeavours to make peace between the lord John de Montford and the lord Charles of Blois, III. 183.

Beaumont, ſir Henry, takes Edward the Second priſoner, while endeavouring to eſcape from Briſtol, I. 30.

Beaumont en Laillois, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

Beauvais, the country of, invaded by the Engliſh under Edward the Third, II. 145.

Becherel, the town of, in Brittany, beſieged by the French under the lord de Cliſſon, IV. 217. —Surrenders on terms, 254, 263.

Bel, John le, his chronicles adopted by Froiſſart, as the foundation of his own, I. 2, 5.

Belleforêt, Monſ. de, an account of his Abridgement of Froiſſart's Chronicles, I. xciii.

Belleperch, the town of, taken by the free companies in the intereſt of the prince of Wales, III. 450.—Retaken by the duke of Bourbon, IV. 66.

Benedict, pope, elected at Avignon, XI. 112.—Forced to reſign his dignity by the king of France and the emperor of Germany, XII. 81.—Depoſed, 196.

Benon, the town of, taken by the Engliſh under the earl of Derby, II. 181.—Retaken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 198.

Bergerac, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 60.—Retaken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 317.

Berkeley, Thomas, lord of, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 334.

Berly, the town of, taken by the forces of the king of Navarre, II. 417.

Berners, lord, his tranſlation of Froiſſart's Chronicles noticed, I. xciv.

Berry, John duke of, returns to France from England, where he had been a hoſtage for king John, III. 382.—Collects his vaſſals to make war on the prince of Wales in Aquitaine, 400.—Invades Limouſin, IV. 76.—Takes the town of Limoges, 93.—Takes the town of St. Severe, in Saintonge, 182.—Appointed governor of Languedoc, V. 238.—Betroths his daughter to the ſon of the count de Blois, VI. 380.—Beſieges the caſtle of Ventadour, IX. 93.—Endeavours to win over the duke of Brittany to the French intereſt, 133.—Propoſes to marry the daughter of the duke of Lancaſter, 159.—Having failed, he ſends to the count de Foix, to demand his ward, the daughter of the count de Boulogne, in marriage, 317.—Is married to her, 344.—Accompanies the king of France in his viſit to the pope at Avignon, X. 13.—Claims the liberation of his agent Bethiſac, who was under proſecution for mal-adminiſtration, 43.

Berry, John of, ſon of the duke of Berry, marries the lady Mary of France, ſiſter of Charles the Sixth, IX. 128.

Berry, the ducheſs of, petitions her huſband in behalf of the lord de la Riviere, XI. 52.—Supports the lord de la Riviere, in oppoſition to the ducheſs of Burgundy, 78.

Berſat, the town of, taken by the Engliſh, V. 30.

Berwick, the caſtle of, taken by Edward the Third, I. 103.—Taken by the Scots, IV. 336.—Retaken by the earl of Northumberland, 344.

Beſenghen, the fort of, in Gaſcony, taken by the Engliſh under ſir Thomas Trivet, V. 35.

Beſſere, La, the caſtle of, taken by the French under ſir Walter de Paſſac, VII. 312.

Bete, ſir Symon, a citizen of Ghent, put to death for having endeavoured to make peace between that town and the earl of Flanders, VI. 13.

Bethiſac, John, the confidential agent of the duke of Berry in Toulouſe, tried at Beziers for mal-adminiſtration, X. 39.—Having confeſſed himſelf guilty of hereſy, &c. he is burnt to death, 49.

Bethune, ſir Robert de, takes the fort of La Roche Vandais, X. 177.

Blanchetaque, the battle of, between the king of England and ſir Godemar du Fay, II. 153.

Blancquefort, Henry de, brother of the emperor of Germany, forcibly marries Margaret of Hungary, who had been betrothed to Louis de Valois, VII. 48.

Blayes, the town of, beſieged by the earl of Derby, II. 92.

Blois, the earl of, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 168.

Blois, lord Charles of, claims the duchy of Brittany, I. 266.—Declared the lawful duke of Brittany by the parliament of Paris, 269.—Enters Brittany with a large force, aſſiſted by the king of France, 271.—Conquers ſeveral towns in the duchy, 272 *et seq.*—Takes his adverſary, the earl of Montford, priſoner, 276.—Takes the town of Rennes, 299.—Beſieges the counteſs of Montford in Hennebon, 300.—Takes the caſtle of Aurai, 314.—Takes the town of Vannes by ſtorm, 315.—Takes the town of Carhaix, II. 8.—Obtains poſſeſſion of the town of Jugon by treachery, 15.—Enters into a truce with the counteſs of Montford, 16.—Beſieges La Roche d'Errien, 211.—Taken priſoner by the forces of the counteſs, 213.—Sent to England, 234.—Returns to France, 375.—Raiſes an army to oppoſe lord John de Montford, III. 175.—Killed at the battle of Auray, 193.—Canonized by Urban the Fifth, 197.

Blois, Guy, count de, returns from England, where he had been hoſtage for king John, III. 383.—Joins the king of France againſt England, IV. 69.—Sells the reverſion of the county of Blois to the duke of Touraine, X. 340.—Dies at Avennes, in Hainault, XII. 22.

Blois, John of, marries the widow of William, count of Juliers, IX. 58.—His death, 59.

Blois, lord Lewis of, marries the lady Mary of Berry, IX. 128.—Dies in Hainault, X. 280.

Blois, the county of, the reverſion of it ſold to the duke of Touraine, X. 340.

Blondeau, ſir John, ſurrenders the caſtle of La Roche ſur Yon to the duke of Cambridge, III. 456.—Put to death in conſequence, 457.

Bodenay, ſir Theobald de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 331.

Bohemia, Charles of Luxembourg king of, ſlain at the battle of Crecy, II. 164.

Bois, Peter du, a citizen of Ghent, choſen one of the commanders of the Whitehoods in that city, V. 131.—Narrowly eſcapes being put to death, 308.—Beſieges Courtray, 309.—Obtains the appointment of Philip von Artaveld to be governor of Ghent, 321.—Defends the paſs of Communes againſt the army of the king of France, VI. 174.—Defeated,

Defeated, with great ſlaughter, 189.—Prevents the town of Bruges from ſurrendering to the king of France, 204.—Retreats to Ghent after the defeat of Philip von Artaveld, 231.—Encourages the men of Ghent to withſtand the army of the king of France, 239.—After a peace being concluded between the duke of Burgundy, as heir of Flanders, and the men of Ghent, he retires to England, VII. 109.

Boniface IX. elected pope by the cardinals of Rome, X. 68.—Sends a learned friar to the king of France to endeavour to gain him over to his intereſt, XI. 77.

Bonneval, the caſtle of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 64.

Bordes, ſir William de, captured by the garriſon of Cherbourg, V. 74.

Boteler, ſir John, of Warrington, captured at Roche Perion, II. 5.—Narrowly eſcapes being put to death, 13.

Boucicault, the lord of, taken priſoner at Remorantin by the prince of Wales, II. 300.—Appointed to the command of an expedition againſt the king of Navarre, III. 128.—Takes the town of Mante by ſtratagem, 131.—Takes the town of Meulan, 131.

Boucicaut, ſir, the younger, with two other French knights, holds a tournament near Calais againſt all comers, X. 89.

Boucicaut, the lord, taken priſoner by the Turks at the battle of Nicopoli, X. 301.—Obtains his ranſom, XII. 1.—Arrives at Venice, 9.—Appointed marſhal of France, 17.—Obliges pope Benedict to ſubmit to the emperor of Germany and the king of France, 81.—Sent to Hungary againſt the Turks, 82.

Boule, John, a citizen of Ghent, appointed one of the captains of the Whitehoods in that city, V. 131.—Put to death by the men of Ghent, 290.

Bourbon, ſir James de, captured by the Engliſh at the battle of Poitiers, II. 335.—Sent by the king of France to oppoſe the free companies, III. 76.—Completely defeated by them at the battle of Brignais, 83.—His death, 84.

Bourbon, duke Peter de, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 331.

Bourbon, duke Louis de, takes the caſtle of Belleperche, IV. 66.—Heads an army into Poitou and Limouſin, VII. 6.—Takes Montlieu in Saintonge, 8.—Beſieges Taillebourg, 9.—Takes Verteuil and returns to Paris, 51.—Appointed to the command of an army to aſſiſt the king of Caſtille againſt the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 155.—Arrives at Burgos, IX. 29.—Returns to France, 31.—Magnificently entertained by the count de Foix, 34.—Appointed commander

mander in chief of an expedition againſt Barbary, X. 129.—Embarks at Genoa, 131.—Lands with his army before the town of Africa, which he beſieges, 195.—His army ſuffers from the heat and inſalubrity of the climate, 208.—Abandons the ſiege and returns to France, 240.—Makes an ineffectual attempt to gain over the towns of Aquitaine during the impriſonment of king Richard the Second, in the Tower, XII. 172.

Bourchier, ſir John, appointed governor of Ghent, VI. 365.—Retires to England, VII. 109.

Bourdeaux, the town of, beſieged by the French under the earl of Liſle, I. 219.

————, the archbiſhop of, impriſoned at Barcelona, VIII. 130.—Liberated, 134.

Bourdeilles, the town of, taken by the Engliſh under the duke of Cambridge, III. 446.

Bournezel, ſir Peter, lord de, ſent on an embaſſy from the king of France to the king of Scotland, V. 60.—Arreſted at Sluys by order of the earl of Flanders, 62.—Returns to Paris, 63.

Boutville, the town of, taken by the French, V. 56.

Brabant, the duke of, joins the Engliſh forces before Cambray, I. 143.—Purchaſes three caſtles belonging to the duke of Gueldres, IX. 61.—Appointed chief of the Langue-

fride,

fride, 63.—Invades the country of Juliers, 67.—Defeated and taken priſoner by the dukes of Juliers and Gueldres, 69.—Obtains his liberty, 73.—His death, 76.

Brabant, the ducheſs of, forms a marriage between the children of Burgundy and thoſe of Hainault, VI. 374.—Cauſes the daughter of duke Stephen of Bavaria to be brought to France to be married to Charles the Sixth, VII. 29.—Applies to the Emperor to intereſt himſelf to obtain the liberation of her huſband from the duke of Juliers, IX. 69.—Sends ambaſſadors to ſolicit the aſſiſtance of France againſt the duke of Gueldres, 84.—Beſieges Grave, 153.—Makes peace with the duke of Gueldres, 303.

Brabanters, the, beſiege Grave, IX. 153.—Defeated with great ſlaughter at the bridge of Raveſtein, 212.—Abandon the ſiege of Grave, 213.—Refuſe to permit the king of France and his army to march through their country, 224.

Bramber, ſir Nicholas, beheaded by order of the duke of Gloceſter, &c. VIII. 359.

Brantome, the town of, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 107.

Breslaw MS. of Froiſſart's Chronicles noticed, I. xci.

Breſt,

Brest, the caſtle of, taken by the earl of Montford as duke of Brittany, I. 257.—Beſieged by the French under ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 225.—Succoured by the earl of Saliſbury, 233.—Beſieged by ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, 375.—Beſieged a ſecond time by him, VII. 303.

Breteuil, the caſtle of, taken by the king of France, II. 293.

Breuse, the viſcount de, captured by the prince of Wales at the battle of Poitiers, II. 304.

Brian, ſir Guy, defeats a Flemiſh fleet off the iſle of Bas, on the coaſt of Brittany, IV. 142.

Brignais, the caſtle of, taken by the freebooting companies, III. 78.

———, the battle of, between lord James of Bourbon and the freebooters, III. 80.

Brimeu, the lord de, taken priſoner by the Engliſh near Arras, V. 192.

Brioude, the town of, ſurrenders to the French, VII. 233.

Briſtol, beſieged by Iſabella, queen of Edward the Second, to obtain poſſeſſion of her huſband and the two ſir Hugh Spencers, I. 27.—Surrenders to her forces, 28.

Brittany, John duke of, his death, I. 251.

Brittany, duke of.—Vide Montford, John de.

Brittany, John of, ſon of the lord Charles of Blois, obtains his ranſom, after having been long impriſoned in England, VIII. 152.

—Marries

—Marries the daughter of ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, 152.

Brittany, the lords of, undertake the wardſhip of their young duke, on the death of his father John de Montford, XII. 188.

Brittany, the duchy of, adjudged to the lord Charles of Blois by the parliament of Paris, I. 269.

Bruce, Robert, king of Scotland, defeats the Engliſh under Edward the Second, at the battle of Bannockburn, I. 8.—Sends a defiance to Edward the Third, I. 38.—Invades England, 46.—His dying requeſt to lord James Douglas, 71.—His death, 74.

Bruce, Robert, ſucceeds to the crown of Scotland on the death of David the Second, IV. 219.—Enters into an alliance with the king of France, 334.—Makes preparations to invade England, 335.—Sends to excuſe himſelf to the king of England for ſome inroads which the Scots, contrary to his orders, had made into England, 353.—Aſſembles a large army to invade England, with the aſſiſtance of the admiral of France, VII. 53.

Bruges, the town of, enters into an alliance with the men of Ghent, V. 128.—Taken by the men of Ghent, VI. 98.—Its gates and walls demoliſhed, 110.—Submits to the mercy of the king of France, after the defeat

feat of the men of Ghent under Philip von Artaveld, 235.

Brunes, lord Bartholomew de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

Brux, the town of, taken by the Engliſh under ſir James Audley, III. 430.

Buch, the captal of, defeats the infamous Jacquerie of Beauvoiſis, with great ſlaughter, II. 393.—Takes the town of Clermont, in Beauvoiſis, 424.—Joins the king of Navarre, III. 132.—Captured at the battle of Cocherel, in Normandy, 156.—Makes peace between the kings of France and Navarre, and obtains his liberty, 209.—Prevents the town of Lourde from being given up to the French, IV. 79.—Taken by the French at Soubiſe, 188.—Impriſoned in the Temple at Paris, 199.—His death, 289.

Buckingham, the earl of, appointed to the command of an army to go to the aſſiſtance of the duke of Brittany, V. 181.—Arrives at Calais, and marches into France, 182.—Burns and deſpoils the country of Champagne, 196.—Overruns the countries of Gatmois and Beauce, 210.—Croſſes the Sarte with great difficulty, 223.—Arrives at Vannes, in Brittany, greatly diſſatisfied with the conduct of the duke of Brittany, 232.—Beſieges Nantes, 243.—Remonſtrates with the duke of Brittany for not

having joined him, 247, 251.—Raiſes the ſiege of Nantes, 255.—Arrives at Vannes, 258.—Returns to England in diſguſt, 276.—Suſpected of favouring the rebellion of Wat Tyler and Jack Straw, 343.—Created duke of Gloceſter, VIII. 118. [For the remaining particulars of this prince, ſee Gloceſter, duke of.]

Bucq, ſir John de, admiral of Flanders, defeated and captured by the Engliſh fleet under the earl of Arundel, VIII. 159.—Dies in London, 164.

Budes, Silveſter, makes war on the Romans on the behalf of pope Clement, V. 81.—Beheaded at Maſcon, 94.

Buffiere, the lord Pierre de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

Burghersh, ſir Bartholomew, takes the caſtle of Cormiry, in Champagne, III. 26.

Burgundy, Philip duke of, enters into a compoſition with Edward the Third to ſpare his duchy, in his march through France, III. 31.—His death, 95.

Burgundy, Philip (ſon of king John of France) duke of, his creation, III. 160.—Sent againſt the free companies into Caux, &c. 162.—Takes the caſtle of Marcheville, and ſeveral other places in Beauce, 116 et ſeq.—Invades great part of the country of Montbelliard, 170.—Takes the town of

La Charité, 172.—Appointed to the command of an army to go into Spain againſt don Pedro, 217.—Enters Spain, 219.—Marries the daughter of the earl of Flanders, 420.—Appointed to the command of an armament againſt England, 451.—Ordered to march againſt the duke of Lancaſter at Calais, IV. 2.—Takes the towns of Ardres and Ardvick, 288.—Makes peace between the earl of Flanders and the men of Ghent, V. 143.—Appointed governor of Picardy, 238.—Inſtigates the king of France to make war on Flanders, VI. 126.—Sends ſuccours to the earl of Flanders to oppoſe the biſhop of Norwich, 289.—Obtains the town of Sluys in exchange for the country of Bethune, VII. 39.—Makes peace with the men of Ghent, 96.—Sends forces to the aſſiſtance of the ducheſs of Brabant, againſt the duke of Gueldres, IX. 95.—Goes to Blois to meet the duke of Brittany, 183.—Accompanies the king of France in his viſit to the pope, at Avignon, X. 13.—Ordered to return, to his great diſſatisfaction, 17.—Appointed regent of France, during the derangement of Charles the Sixth, XI. 30.—Treats ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, the conſtable of France, harſhly, 40.—Arreſts ſeveral of the king's council, 43.

Burgundy, John of, ſon of the duke of Burgundy, appointed commander in chief of an expedition againſt the Turks, XI. 207.—Croſſes the Danube with a large force, in company with the king of Hungary, 232.—Takes by ſtorm the town of Comute, 234.—Beſieges Nicopoli, 237.—Defeated by the Turkiſh army under the Sultan Bajazet, 297.—Taken priſoner, 301.—Obtains his ranſom, XII. 1.—Returns to France, 18.

Burley, ſir Simon, taken by the French, 409.—Sent to negociate a marriage between Richard the Second and the daughter of Charles of Bohemia, emperor of Germany, V. 149.—Adviſes the removal of the ſhrine of St. Thomas from Canterbury to Dover Caſtle, by which he gives great offence, VIII. 101.—Committed to the Tower by order of the commiſſioners of accounts, appointed to examine into his conduct during his adminiſtration, VIII. 322.—Beheaded, 328.

Burley, ſir Richard, ſon of the above, dies in Caſtille, VIII. 328. IX. 19.

C.

Cadillac, the town of, taken by ſtorm, IV. 327.

Cadsant, the iſland of, taken by the Engliſh, I. 124.

Caen, the battle of, II. 135.
Caen, the town of, taken by Edward the Third, II. 136.
Cahors, the town of, turns to the French intereſt, III. 414.
Cahours, Raoul de, defeats the Engliſh under ſir Thomas Daggeworth in Brittany, II. 267.
Calais, the battle of, between the Engliſh and French forces, II. 246.
Calais, the town of, beſieged by Edward the Third, II. 174.—Surrenders to him, 225.
Calverly, ſir Hugh, joins the prince of Wales in Aquitaine with a large body of the free companies, III. 405.—Endeavours to diſſuade the biſhop of Norwich from entering Flanders with the forces under his command, VI. 268.
Cambray, the city of, beſieged by Edward the Third, I. 142.
Cambridge, the earl of, ſent to the aſſiſtance of the prince of Wales in Aquitaine, III. 403.—Makes war in Perigord, &c. 407.—Takes the town of Bourdeilles, 446.—Leads a body of troops to the relief of Belleperche, IV. 60.—Returns to England, 121.—Appointed to the command of an army to go to the aſſiſtance of the king of Portugal againſt the king of Caſtille, V. 329.—Arrives at Liſbon, 381.—Returns with his army, diſſatisfied with the conduct of the king of Portugal, VI. 66. VII. 115.

Created duke of York, VIII. 118. [For the remaining particulars of this prince ſee York, the duke of.]

Camerolles, the caſtle of, taken by the duke of Burgundy, III. 167.

Campreny, the lord of, captured by the captal of Buch, III. 38.

Candorier, John, mayor of La Rochelle, obtains poſſeſſion of the caſtle from the Engliſh, by ſtratagem, IV. 193.

Canterbury, the archbiſhop of, ſent to Briſtol by the duke of Gloceſter and the Londoners, on an embaſſy to Richard the Second, VIII. 361.—Conducts him to London, 363.—Sent to France with an application from the Londoners to the earl of Derby to return to England, XII. 114.—Conducts the earl to London, 127.

Caponnal, Caponnel de, liberated by exchange, IV. 54.

Captal, the title explained, II. 305. *note.*

Carcilhart, the fort of, taken by the Engliſh under ſir Thomas Trivet, V. 35.

Carentan, the town of, taken by Edward the Third, II. 128.—Retaken by the French under the lord de Coucy, IV. 377.

Carhaix, the town of, taken by the lord Charles of Blois, II. 8.

Carogne, ſir John de, kills James le Gris in a mortal combat, VIII. 126.

Carquefois, the town of, taken by the lord Charles of Blois, I. 273.

Cassel, the battle of, I. 80.

Casseres, the town of, taken by the count de Foix, VII. 142.

Cassuriel, the caſtle of, in Auvergne, taken by Amerigot Marcel, V. 76.

Castillon, the town of, taken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 321.

Cervole, Arnauld de, the archprieſt, collects a body of armed men and pillages Provence, II. 380.—Captured at the battle of Brignais, III. 83.

Chalons, the town of, unſucceſsfully attacked by ſir Peter Audley, II. 439.

Chalons, the biſhop of, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 331.

Chandos, ſir John, receives the lands of St. Sauveur le Vicomte as a gift from the king of England, III. 63.—Appointed regent over all the poſſeſſions of the king of England in France, 71.—Appointed conſtable of Guienne, 102.—Sent to the aſſiſtance of the lord John de Montford in Brittany, 174.—Prevents a peace being concluded between John de Montford and the lord Charles of Blois, 187.—Defeats the army of lord Charles at the battle of Auray, 194.—Adviſes the prince of Wales not to perſevere in his deſign of enforcing the fouage or

hearth-tax, and failing to ſucceed retires to his country ſeat, 344.—Recalled by the prince, and ſent to make war on the French and Gaſcon lords, 389.—Takes the town of Terrieres, and ſeveral others in the Toulouſain, 411, et ſeq.—Appointed ſeneſchal of Poitou, 458.—Invades and pillages the territories of Anjou and Rochechouart, IV. 8.—Killed in a ſkirmiſh at the bridge of Luſſac, 45.

Chargny, the lord de, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

———, Sir Geoffry de, endeavours to gain poſſeſſion of Calais, by bribing the governor ſir Aymery de Parie, II. 240.—Defeated by the king of England, 246.—Embarks for Scotland to offer his aſſiſtance againſt England, VI. 347.—Returns, and is in great danger from the Zealanders, 358.

Chargny en Dormois, the caſtle of, taken by ſir John Chandos, III. 17.

Charité La, the town of, in the Nivernois, taken by the lord Lewis of Navarre, III. 165.—Taken by the duke of Burgundy, 172.—Taken a ſecond time by the French, VII. 224.

Charles, emperor of Germany, his death, V. 148.

Charles of Bohemia, emperor of Germany, collects a large army to make war on the duke of Gueldres in the cauſe of the ducheſs of Brabant, IX. 70.—Receives his ſubmiſſion, 73.

Charles the Fourth, king of France, takes meaſures to aſſiſt his ſiſter Iſabella, queen of Edward the Second, againſt her huſband and the Spencers, I. 14.—Is prevailed upon by ſir Hugh Spencer to break up the expedition which he had encouraged his ſiſter to raiſe in France, 17.—Commands her to quit the kingdom, 18.—His death, 79.

Charles the Fifth, of France, crowned at Rheims, III. 160.—Makes peace with the lord John de Montford, and acknowledges him lawful duke of Brittany, 207.—Makes peace with the king of Navarre, 209.—Raiſes an army to make war on don Pedro, king of Caſtille, 215.—Is adviſed to declare himſelf lord paramount of Guienne, and to renew the war with England, 365, 373.—Summonſes the prince of Wales to appear before the parliament of Paris to anſwer the complaints of ſome Gaſcon lords, 374.—Makes preparations to renew the war againſt the Engliſh, 381.—Gains over ſeveral captains of the free companies, 290.—Sends his challenge to the king of England, 392.—Prepares an armament for the invaſion of England, 451.—Breaks up the expedition in conſequence of the arrival of the duke of Lancaſter

Lancaſter at Calais, IV. 2.—aſſembles a large force, to make war on Aquitaine, 68.—Makes peace with the king of Navarre, 71.—Enters into an alliance with don Henry, king of Caſtille, 148.—Makes peace with the king of Navarre, 218.—Sends an army to invade the duchy of Brittany, 220.—Enters into a truce with the Engliſh, 271.—Fits out a fleet for the invaſion of England, which does conſiderable miſchief, 284.—Declares war againſt the king of Navarre, 291.—Inſtigates the king of Scotland to make war on England, 334.—Seizes the poſſeſſions of the king of Navarre in Normandy, 368.—Sends an ambaſſador to the king of Scotland, V. 60.—His ambaſſador detained by the earl of Flanders, 65.—Orders the earl of Flanders to ſend the duke of Brittany out of his dominions, 65.—Puts himſelf under obedience to Clement as the lawful pope, 82.—Afflicted with a ſingular diſorder, 217.—His laſt words and advice on his death bed, 219.—Dies at Paris, 224.

Charles the Sixth, of France, crowned at Rheims, V. 352.—Sends an army to the aſſiſtance of the king of Caſtille, VI. 29.—Determines to make war on Flanders in behalf of the earl, 126.—On account of a dream, he chooſes a flying hart for his device, 131.—endeavours to treat with the Flemings, 145.—collects a large force to reduce them to

to obedience, 157.—Defeats the Flemiſh army at the bridge of Commines, 196.—Receives the ſubmiſſion of Ypres and ſeveral other places, 198 *et ſeq.*—Defeats the Flemings, under Philip von Artaveld, with great ſlaughter, 227.—Enters Courtray, 232.—Receives the ſubmiſſion of Bruges, 235.—Returns to France, 246.—Makes his entrance into Paris, 252.—Aſſembles a large army to oppoſe the biſhop of Norwich in Flanders, 294.—Takes Caſſel, 305, and Bourbourg, 329.—Returns to France, 331.—Enters into a truce with England, 337.—Prepares to renew the war, 368.—Marries the lady Iſabella, of Bavaria, VII. 34.—Makes great preparations to invade England, VIII. 31.—Promiſes to aſſiſt the king of Caſtille, 48.—Joins his armament at Sluys, 102.—Puts off his deſign, and diſbands his army, 117.—Makes preparations to aſſiſt the king of Caſtille, 154.—Prepares another armament againſt England, under ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, 224.—His deſigns fruſtrated by the arreſt of ſir Oliver by the duke of Brittany, 242.—Receives an inſulting defiance from the duke of Gueldres, 263.—Commands the duke of Brittany to reſtore to ſir Oliver de Cliſſon the places which he had unjuſtly taken from him for his ranſom, 302.—Receives a haughty anſwer from him, 305.—Promiſes to aſſiſt the ducheſs of Brabant

Brabant againſt the duke of Juliers, IX. 85.—Invites the duke of Ireland (who had been baniſhed England by the duke of Glouceſter and his party) to reſide in France, 143.—Prepares an army to invade Guelderland, 218.—Sends ambaſſadors to explain his intentions to the emperor of Germany, 220.—Receives favourable anſwers, 232.—Enters the duchy of Juliers, 293.—Receives the ſubmiſſion of the duke of Gueldres, 303.—Returns to France, 304.—Takes upon himſelf the government of France, on coming of age, 310.—Sends ambaſſadors to the king of Caſtille, to remonſtrate with him on the marriage of his ſon, the infanta of Spain, with the daughter of the duke of Lancaſter, 312.—Enters into a truce with the king of England, 347.—Orders the duke of Ireland to quit France, X. 10.—Viſits the pope at Avignon, 13.—Viſits Montpellier, &c. 18 *et ſeq.*—Receives the homage of the count de Foix at Toulouſe, 58.—Travels with great ſpeed from Montpellier to Paris, for a wager againſt the duke of Touraine, 62.—Reproves the count d'Oſtrevant for accepting the order of the Garter from the king of England, 233.—Propoſes to march to Italy to reſtore the union of the church, 247.—Receives ambaſſadors from the king of England with propoſitions for a peace, 250.—On the death of the count de Foix, ſends

ſends ambaſſadors to Orthes, to make ſome arrangements reſpecting the country, 302. —Meets the duke of Brittany at Tours, to make an amicable ſettlement of the differences between them, 320.—Acknowledges the viſcount de Chateaubon heir and ſucceſſor to the count de Foix, 326.—agrees to marry his daughter to the ſon of the duke of Brittany, 333.—Receives the commiſſioners from the king of England at Amiens, 347.—Not being able to conclude a peace, he enters into a truce for a year, 353.—Commands the duke of Brittany to deliver up ſir Peter de Craon, who had fled to Brittany, after attempting to aſſaſſinate ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, XI. 2.—After receiving the duke's refuſal, he leads an army againſt him towards Brittany, 7. —arrives at Mans, 9.—is accoſted by a madman in the foreſt of Mans, who orders him to return, 19.—Becomes deranged, 22.—His expedition is, in conſequence, broken up, 24.—Removed to Creil for the benefit of his health, 29.—Recovers his ſenſes, 61.—Returns to Paris, 67.—In great danger of loſing his life at a maſqued dance, 72.—Appoints commiſſioners to negociate a peace with the king of England at Leulinghen, 95.—prolongs the truce with him, 105.—Relapſes into his former malady, 109.—Sends ambaſſadors to the duke of Lancaſter

Lancaſter in Aquitaine, to learn his intentions in coming to that country, 138.—Sends Robert the hermit to England, to aſſiſt in bringing about a peace between the two countries, 181.—Liberates the lord de la Riviere and ſir John le Mercier, who had been impriſoned by his uncles, during his derangement, 190.—Appoints John, ſon of the duke of Burgundy, commander in chief of an expedition againſt the Turks in Hungary, 207.—Betroths his daughter, the lady Iſabella, to Richard the Second of England, 224.—Sets out for St. Omer, to meet the king of England, 260.—Has an interview with him at Ardres, 285.—Delivers up his daughter to him, 288.—Propoſes to lead an army into Lombardy againſt the duke of Milan, 290.—Meets the emperor of Germany at Rheims, to confer upon meaſures to reſtore the reunion of the church, XII. 35.—Sends ambaſſadors to pope Boniface, to acquaint him with the reſolutions of the aſſembly, 65.—Sends the ſame to pope Benedict at Avignon, 70.—Informed of the impriſonment of Richard the Second in the Tower of London, 167.—Relapſes again into his derangement, 168.—His council ſend perſons over to England to viſit his daughter, queen Iſabella, during the confinement of the king, 174.

Charles, lord of Navarre, cauſes the conſtable of France to be murdered, II. 273.—Obtains the king's pardon, 277.

Charles, ſon of the king of Navarre, marries the daughter of Henry of Caſtille, V. 50.

Charles, of Spain, earl of Angoulême, appointed conſtable of France, II. 269.—Marries the daughter of the lord Charles of Blois, 271. —Murdered by order of Charles of Navarre, 273.

Charter of Peace, between the king of England and the duke of Normandy, III. 43.

Chateau-ceaux, the caſtle of, taken by the lord Charles of Blois, I. 272.

Chatel-bon, the viſcount de, claims the ſucceſſion of Foix, X. 313.—His claim acknowledged by the king of France, 326.—Takes poſſeſſion of the county as his inheritance, 343. —Does homage to the king of France, XI. 68.

Chatelheraut, the town of, taken by the French, IV. 57.

Chatelmorant, ſir John de, carries over from England truces for three years, ſigned by king Richard and his allies, X. 1.—Sent to Turkey, to treat for the ranſom of the duke of Burgundy and the other officers taken at the battle of Nicopoli, XI. 318.

Chatillon, ſir Hugh de, conquers Ponthieu from the Engliſh, III. 397.—Captured at Abbville,

ville, IV. 37.—Eſcapes from England, 258.

Chaumont, the hermit, taken priſoner at Remorantin by the prince of Wales, II. 300.

Chauvigny, the lord of, taken priſoner by the prince of Wales, II. 304.—quits the party of the prince of Wales for that of the king of France, III. 428.

Chauvigny, the town of, in Poitou, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 173.

Cherbourg, the town of, burnt and pillaged by Edward the Third, II. 128.—Beſieged by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 293.

Chimay, the town of, pillaged by the French, I. 167.

Civray, the town of, in Poitou, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 213.

Civray, the battle of, IV. 212.

Clement the Sixth, pope, dies at Avignon, II. 273.

Clement the Seventh, pope, elected during the life-time of Urban the Sixth, which cauſes a ſchiſm in the church, V. 80.—Is acknowledged by the king of France, &c. 82.—Goes to Avignon, 91.—Preſents the duke of Anjou with the territories of the queen of Naples, which ſhe had given up to his diſpoſal, 91.—Dies at Avignon, XI. 111.

Clermont, the town of, in Beauvoiſis, taken by the captal of Buch, II. 424.

Clermont, the cardinal of, elected pope, under the name of Innocent the Sixth, II. 273.

Clermont, lord John, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 323.

Cliſſon, the lord of, captured at Vannes, II. 36. exchanged for lord Stafford, 43.—Beheaded at Paris, 44.

Cliſſon, ſir Oliver de, beſieges the town of Becherel, IV. 217.—Beſieges La Roche ſur Yon, 225.—Takes the town of Dinant, V. 152.—Appointed conſtable of France, 237.—Beſieges Breſt, VII. 303.—His fleet diſperſed by a ſtorm on his voyage to Sluys, to join the armament of the king of France, VIII. 112.—Obtains the liberation of John of Brittany from England, and marries him to his daughter, 152.—Makes preparations to invade England, 224, 232.—Arreſted by the duke of Brittany at the caſtle of Ermine, 242.—Obtains his liberty, 257.—Complains to the king of France of the conduct of the duke of Brittany, and offers to reſign his office of conſtable, 259.—Retires to Montlehery, 261.—Takes the towns of St. Malo and St. Matthieu de Fine Pôterne, IX. 155.—His caſtles reſtored to him by the duke of Brittany, 169.—Way-laid and ſeverely wounded by ſir Peter de Craon, X. 367.—On account of his wealth, he incurs the ſuſpicions and hatred of the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, XI. 4.—Treated with great

harſhneſs by the duke of Burgundy, 40.—Retires from Paris, 41.—Summoned to appear before the parliament of Paris, 55.—Not anſwering to the ſummons, he is baniſhed the kingdom, 56.—Wages a violent warfare againſt the duke of Brittany, 88.—Makes peace with him, 200.

Cliſſon, ſir Walter de, ſlain at Breſt, I. 256.

Cobourne, the caſtle of, in Limouſin, taken by a robber of the name of Bacon, II. 235.

Cocherel, the battle of, in Normandy, III. 154.

Combat, the noted, between thirty Bretons and thirty Engliſh, II. 237, *note*.

——— between ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin and ſir Nicholas Dagworth, at Rennes, II. 374.

——— between ſir Aymon de Pommiers and ſir Foulque d'Archiac, before the king of France at Villeneuve, III. 103.

——— remarkable one at Lar, between the garriſon of Lourde and Tarbe, VII. 166.

——— a mortal, at Paris, between ſir John de Carogne and James le Gris, VIII. 126.

Comecte, the town of, in Turkey, taken by ſtorm by the combined chriſtian armies under the king of Hungary and John of Burgundy, XI. 234.

Comfit Box, (drageoir) a ſpice box uſed in the deſert of the great, ſome account of it, X. 56, *note*.

Commissioners sent to France, to execute the condition of the peace between France and England, III. 69.

——— appointed to examine into the conduct of the managers of the finances under Richard the Second, VIII. 319.—Commit sir Simon Burley to the Tower, 322.—Condemn him to death, 327.—Appoint a new council for the king, 330.

Concarneau, the town of, taken by sir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 225.

Conferences held at Avignon between the French and Engliſh to negociate a peace, II. 279.

——— held at Leulinghen for the ſame purpoſe, XI. 96.

Connic, the caſtle of, taken by the duke of Burgundy, III. 169.

Conquet, the caſtle of, taken by the forces of the lord Charles of Blois, I. 311.—Retaken by ſir Walter Manney, 312.

Conſtance, the lady, daughter of don Pedro, king of Caſtille, married to the duke of Lancaſter, IV. 147.

Convalle, the caſtle of taken by the French under ſir Walter de Maſſac, VII. 320.

Copeland, John, captures the king of Scotland at the battle of Nevil's Croſs, II. 190.—Delivers him up to the queen of England by order of king Edward, who was at Calais, 199.

Corasse, the lord of, ſaid to have been ſerved by a familiar ſpirit called Orthon, VII. 294.

Cormicy, the caſtle of, taken by ſir Bartholomew Burgherſt, III. 26.

Coucy, the lord de, declines taking any part in the wars between the kings of France and England, IV. 52.—Leads a large army into Auſtria, 275.—Returns without having effected any thing, 278.—Takes the town of Bayeux, &c. 376.—Takes the town of Evreux, V. 10.—Appointed governor of Picardy, 176.—Appeaſes the Pariſian inſurgents, VI. 16.—Endeavours to gain over the duke of Brittany to the French intereſt, IX. 164.—Accompanies the lord Lewis of Anjou, king of Sicily, to Arragon, X. 3.—Refuſes to accept the office of conſtable of France after the diſgrace of ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, XI. 82.—Defeats a large Turkiſh force near Nicopoli, 252.—Captured at the battle of Nicopoli, 301.—Dies at Burſay in Turkey, 366.

Coucy, the lord Raoul de, captured at Manconſeil, II. 415.

Coulogne, ſir Robert de, ſlain in a ſkirmiſh at Tournehem, IV. 24.

Council of State, a new one appointed for Richard the Second by the commiſſioners of accounts, VIII. 330.

Courtray, the town of, turns to the intereſt of the earl of Flanders, V. 292.—Beſieged by the

the men of Ghent under Peter du Bois, 309. —Burnt by order of the king of France, VI. 242.

Coutantin, the battle of, between the French and Engliſh, II. 362.

Craon, the lord of, taken priſoner by the prince of Wales at Romorantin, II. 300.

Craon, ſir Peter de, incurs the diſpleaſure of the king of France, X. 285.—Retires to Brittany, 286.—Way-lays and endeavours to aſſaſſinate ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, 367.—Takes refuge in Brittany, 373.—Endeavours to make his peace with the king of France, X. 202.—Proſecuted in the courts of Paris by the ducheſs of Anjou, 203.—Judgment being given againſt him, he is committed to priſon, 223.—Obtains his liberty, 290. —Accompanies Henry, earl of Derby, into England, XII. 122.

Crecy, the battle of, II. 163.

Credo, the caſtle of, in Brittany, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 229.

Creil, the town of, taken by the king of Navarre, II. 411.

Croisade, preached againſt the Saracens, I. 107.— againſt the free-booting companies by pope Innocent the Seventh, III. 88.

Croquart, a page, turns rebel, II. 236.—Killed by the fall of his horſe, 239.

Crotoy, the town of, taken by Edward the Third, II. 155.—Retaken by ſir Hugh de Chatillon, III. 397.

D.

Daggeworth, ſir Thomas, ſent into Brittany to the aſſiſtance of the counteſs de Montford, II. 52.—Taken priſoner before La Roche d'Errien, 212.—Killed in Brittany, 267.

Daire, John, a citizen of Calais, his patriotic conduct during the ſiege of that city by Edward the Third, II. 225.

Dalkeith, the caſtle of, taken by Edward the Third, I. 101.

Damazan, the caſtle of, taken by the duke of Normandy, II. 114.

Dammartin, the earl of, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

Dampmartin, the lord de, reſiſts the dukes of Berry and Burgundy in their attempts to break off the marriage of his daughter with the ſon of the lord de la Riviere, XI. 51.

Damme, the town of, taken by the men of Ghent, VI. 106. VII. 32.—Taken by the king of France, 43.

David the Second, king of Scotland, retires to France, I. 130.—Enters into an alliance with

with king Philip, 132.—Returns to Scotland, 281.—Aſſembles an army to invade England, 282.—Takes the town of Durham, 286.—Beſieges Wark caſtle, 286.—Returns to Scotland, 291.—Invades England a ſecond time, II. 186.—Defeated and taken priſoner at Nevil's Croſs, 189.—Sent to the Tower of London, 199.—Liberated by a treaty of peace, 372.—Comes to England to meet the king of Cyprus, III. 115.—Enters into a truce with the king of England, IV. 81.—His death, 219.

Death, remarkable, of a ſoldier, who had ſacrilegiouſly robbed the church of Ronay, in Champagne, II. 456.

Dedication, I. iii.

Deed of arms, between ſir Thomas Harpurgan and ſir John des Barres, IX. 191.

——— between five Engliſh and five French knights, before the duke of Lancaſter at Bourdeaux, IX. 336.

Deputations from the different towns of England wait on Richard the Second at Windſor to lay their grievances before him, and to demand redreſs, VIII. 316.

Derby, the earl of, appointed to the command of a large army to go into Gaſcony, II. 51.—Takes Bergerac and ſeveral other places in Gaſcony, 60 et ſeq.—Created duke of Lancaſter, 253.

Derby, Henry earl of, marries the lady Mary, daughter of the earl of Hereford, V. 241. —Appointed the lieutenant of his father, the duke of Lancaſter, during his abſence in Spain, VII. 4.—Challenged by the earl marſhal of England in the preſence of the king, XII. 44.—Baniſhed the kingdom, 56.—Goes to Paris, 63.—The people of England riſe in his favour, 109.—Receives a requeſt from the people of London to return to England, 116.—Arrives in London, 128.—Undertakes the government of England, and determines to ſeize the throne, 129.—Marches towards Briſtol againſt Richard the Second, 130.—Takes him priſoner, and conducts him to London, 140.—Crowned king of England under the title of Henry the Fourth, 160.—In danger of being murdered by the earls of Huntingdon and Saliſbury, 180.

Derval, the caſtle of, beſieged by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 227.—Relieved by ſir Robert Knolles, 234.

Desponde, Dinde, a rich merchant, employed to negociate the ranſom of John of Burgundy and his companions from the ſultan Bajazet, XI. 334.

Destournay, the lord, takes the town of Oudenarde by ſtratagem, VI. 363.

Devereux, ſir John, takes the caſtle of Uzes, in Auvergne, IV. 135.

Dighos, the town of, in Galicia, ſurrenders to the duke of Lancaſter's army, VIII. 84.

Dinant, the town of, in Brittany, taken by the forces of the lord Charles of Blois, I. 312. —Taken by the Engliſh under Edward the Third, II. 37.—Surrenders to the lord John de Montford, III. 203.—Taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.—Taken by ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, V. 152.

Diſſentions at York between the archers of England and the Hainalters, I. 41.

Dormans, ſir William de, preaches the juſtice of the cauſe of the French king, III. 414.

Doublet, Oliver, beheaded at Rouen, II. 290.

Douglas, ſir Archibald, defeated and captured by ſir Thomas Muſgrave, near Milroſe, IV. 352.

Douglas, lord James, departs for the Holy Land to fulfil the requeſt of Robert Bruce the Firſt, I. 74.—Killed in Spain, fighting againſt the Saracens, 76.

Douglas, lord William, takes the caſtle of Edinburgh by ſtratagem, I. 222.—Taken priſoner at the battle of Nevil's Croſs, II. 196.

Douglas, the earl of, invades England with a large force, IX. 246.—Takes the pennon of ſir Henry Percy before Newcaſtle, 248.—Slain at the battle of Otterbourne, 258.

Dream,

Dream, remarkable, of Charles the Sixth of France, VI. 128.

Drue, the caſtle of, taken by the duke of Normandy, III. 168.

Duel, at Paris, between James le Gris and John de Carogne, VIII. 126.

Dumbarton, the caſtle of, taken by Edward the Third, I. 100.

Dumfermline, the town of, deſtroyed by Richard the Second, VII. 69.

Dundee, the town of, burnt by Richard the Second, VII. 70.

Dunkirk, the town of, taken by the biſhop of Norwich, VI. 282.

Duras, the town of, taken by ſtorm by the duke of Anjou, IV. 329.

Duras, the lord de, captured by the French under the duke of Anjou, IV. 314.—Turns to the French intereſt, but quits it afterwards, 319.

Durazzo, the lord Charles de, defends the kingdom of Naples againſt the pretenſions of the duke of Anjou, VI. 38.—Put to death in Hungary, VII. 22.

Durham, the city of, taken and deſtroyed by the Scots, I. 286.—[This account ſuppoſed to be fabulous, 291, *note*.]

E.

Edinburgh, the town of, taken by Edward the Third, I. 99.—Retaken by ſir William Douglas, 222.—Deſtroyed by Richard the Second, VII. 68.

Edward the Firſt, king of England, his character and ſucceſſes, I. 7.—His ſingular requeſt on his death-bed, 105.

Edward the Second, his character, I. 7.—An account of his family relations, 8.—Influenced in his government by ſir Hugh Spencer, 10.—Shuts himſelf up in Briſtol againſt the queen and her party, 27.—Taken priſoner by them, 30.—Confined in Berkeley Caſtle, 31.—Publicly depoſed, and ſentenced by the people of England to be impriſoned during his life, 35.

Edward the Third, crowned king of England, I. 35. — Receives a defiance from Robert Bruce, king of Scotland, 38.—Leads a large army to oppoſe the invaſion of the Scots, 45.—Returns, 64.—Marries the lady Philippa of Hainault, 70.—Enters into a truce with the Scots, 71.—Does homage to the king of France for the duchy of Guienne, 88.—Raiſes an army to invade Scotland, 99.—Takes Edinburgh and ſeveral

ral other places, 99, et ſeq.—Returns to England, 103.—Takes meaſures to make war on the king of France, 111.—Solicits the friendſhip of the Flemings, 118.—Paſſes over to Flanders, and makes great alliances in the empire, 126.—Appointed vicar-general of the empire of Germany, 130.—Sends his defiance to the king of France, 137.—Beſieges Cambray, 142.—Marches into France, 146.—Returns to Hainault, 161.—Aſſumes the arms of France, 164.—Returns to England, 165.—Sails with a large armament for Flanders, 207.—Defeats the French at ſea, and arrives at Ghent, 211.—Beſieges Tournay, 216.—Returns to England in conſequence of a truce being entered into, 249.—Receives the homage of lord John de Montford for the duchy of Brittany, 265.—Aſſembles an army to oppoſe an invaſion of the Scots, 285.—Is enamoured with the counteſs of Saliſbury, 292.—Sends a force to the aſſiſtance of the lord de Montford, 299.—Makes great feaſts out of affection for the counteſs of Saliſbury, II. 17.—Sends reinforcements into Brittany, II. 20.—Heads a large army into Brittany, 31.—Beſieges the town of Vannes, 32.—Beſieges and takes ſeveral other places, 33, et ſeq.—Enters into a truce with the French, and returns to England, 43.—Inſtitutes the order of the garter, 43.—Founds the chapel of

of St. George at Windſor, 46.—Sends his defiance to the king of France, 49.—Appoints the earl of Derby to the command of an expedition into Gaſcony, 51.—Heads a large army into Normandy, 125.—Takes the town of Barfleur, and ſeveral others, 127, et ſeq.—Marches towards Paris, deſtroying the country on his way, 143.—Diſtreſſed to find a paſſage over the Somme, 148.—Is conducted to one by a peaſant named Gobin Agace, 151.—Engages the French under king Philip, at Crecy, and totally defeats them, 163, et ſeq.—Beſieges the town of Calais, 174.—Solicits the friendſhip of the Flemings, 202.—Obtains poſſeſſion of Calais, 225.—Orders ſix reſpectable citizens, who, for the ſecurity of the other inhabitants, had generouſly volunteered to ſubmit themſelves to his pleaſure, to be put to death, 226.—Is diſſuaded from his purpoſe by the queen, 227.—Orders all the old inhabitants of the town to be expelled, 230.—Makes his public entry into Calais, 231.—Enters into a truce with the king of France, 232.—The expence of his eſtabliſhment at Calais, 233, *note*.—Fights *incognito* near Calais, under the banner of ſir Walter Manny, 246.—Takes ſir Euſtace de Ribeaumont priſoner, 246.—Preſents him with a chaplet of pearls in honour of his proweſs, 246.—Defeats the Spaniards at ſea, 260.—Leads a large army into France

France during the impriſonment of king John in England, 475.—Beſieges Rheims, III. 13.—Takes the town of Tonnerre, 27.—Enters into a compoſition with the duke of Burgundy to ſpare his duchy, 31.—Proceeds towards Paris, deſtroying the country in his march, 31.—Enters into a treaty of peace with the king of France, 43.—Entertains him at Calais, 65.—Returns to England, 66.—Declines embarking in the Croiſades, 114.—Receives a defiance from the king of France, 395.—Sends reinforcements into Ponthieu, &c. 396.—Sends to Brabant and Hainault for aſſiſtance, 415.—Enters into alliance with the king of Navarre, 422.—Sends the duke of Lancaſter with a large body of men to Calais, 452.—Applies to ſir Robert de Namur for his aſſiſtance, 453.—Raiſes a large force to make war on the king of France, IV. 70.—Enters into a truce with the Scots, 81.—Makes peace with the Flemings, 143.—Prepares an army to invade France, 151.—Sails from Southampton, but is obliged to return by contrary winds, 201.—Enters into a truce with the French, 271.—Dies at Shene, 282.

Edward, the Black Prince of Wales, his valour at the battle of Crecy, II. 167.—Heads an army into Gaſcony, 282.—Invades the county of Berry, 294.—Takes the town of Romorantin, 298.—Defeats and captures the king

king of France at the battle of Poitiers, 337.—Embarks for England with his priſoner king John, 368.—Arrives in London, 369.—Accompanies the king of England in an expedition againſt France, III. 1.—Sets out for Aquitaine, 99.—Makes preparations to aſſiſt Don Pedro, king of Caſtille, 242.—Promiſes the king of Majorca to aſſiſt him againſt the king of Arragon, 262.—Offends the lord d'Albret, 264.—Sets out on his expedition into Spain, 267.—Takes the town of Salvatierra, 283.—Defeats the army of Don Henry de Traſtamare, king of Caſtille, at the battle of Navareta, 315.—Takes the town of Najara, 316.—Sets out on his return to Aquitaine, diſpleaſed with the conduct of Don Pedro, 332.—Arrives with his army at Bourdeaux, 334.—Endeavours to impoſe the fouage, or a hearth tax, in Aquitaine, 342.—Excites the diſcontent and oppoſition of many of the lords of Gaſcony, 343.—Summoned to appear before the parliament of Paris to anſwer their complaints, 374.—His reſolute anſwer to the ſummons, 378.—Prepares to make war on France, 386.—Recalls ſir John Chandos from his retirement, and appoints him to the command of a force againſt the French and Gaſcon lords, 389.—Receives ſuccours from England under the earls of Cambridge and Pembroke, 406.

406.—Prepares to oppoſe the dukes of Anjou and Berry, IV. 77.—Takes the town of Limogues by ſtorm, 96.—On the death of his eldeſt ſon Edward gives up the duchy of Aquitaine to the care of his brother the duke of Lancaſter, and returns to England, 120.—His death, 277.—Viſits the count d'Armagnac at Tarbes, VII. 126.—Is viſited by the count de Foix, 127.—Appoints ſir Peter Arnaut governor of Lourde, 129.

Eltham, ſir William, committed to the Tower by the commiſſioners of accounts, on a charge of having ſold Bourbourg and Gravelines to the French, VI. 333.

Engliſh, the, their manners in the time of Froiſſart, VII. 324.

Entença, the town of, in Galicia, ſurrenders to the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 180.

Escandoure, the caſtle of, in Hainault, taken and deſtroyed, I. 194.

Espaign, the bourg d', his remarkable ſtrength, VII. 170.

Estampes, the count de, ſent to endeavour to win over the duke of Brittany to the French intereſt, IX. 133.

Eu, the earl of, taken priſoner by the Engliſh under Edward the Third, II. 136.—Beheaded at Paris, 268.

Eu, the count de. See Artois, Philip d'.

Evan, of Wales, receives a naval command under the king of France, IV. 165.—Defeats the Engliſh in the iſland of Guernſey, 166.—Sent to Spain to ſolicit aſſiſtance from king Henry, 167.—Inſults the earl of Pembroke at St. Andero, 169.—Blockades the town of La Rochelle, 185.—Takes the caſtle of Soubiſe, IV. 189.—Beſieges Mortmain-ſur-mer, 333.—Aſſaſſinated by John Lambe, V. 6.

Evreux, the county of, ſubdued for the king of France by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 292.

Europe, deſolated by the plague, II. 265. *note.*

Euſtace, de St. Pierre, a citizen of Calais, his patriotic conduct during the ſiege of that town, II. 224.

F.

Famine, a great one, in France, II. 421.

Fauecle, John de, a citizen of Ghent, retires from the town after the murder of the bailiff by the Whitehoods, V. 118.—Dies at Liſle, 317.

Fay, ſir Godemar du, defends the ford of Blanche-taque againſt Edward the Third and his army, II. 153.—Defeated by the Engliſh, 154.—Narrowly eſcapes being put to death, 177.

Felton, ſir William, killed in Spain, III. 292.

Felton, ſir Thomas, captured by the French under the duke of Anjou, IV. 314.

Fenestrages, the lord Broquart de, takes the town of Hans, II. 448.—Defeated and captured by ſir Euſtace d'Ambreticourt, 452.

Ferdinand, king of Portugal, declares war againſt John king of Caſtille, V. 324.—Applies to England for aſſiſtance, 325.—Takes the field againſt the Spaniards, VI. 61.—Makes peace with the king of Caſtille, 63.—Marries his daughter the infanta to him, 67.—His death, 67.—Marries the wife of one of his knights, VII. 372.

Ferrol, the town of, taken by the king of Portugal, VIII. 284.

Fitzwalter, the lord, dies in Spain, IX. 171.

Flanders, the origin of the civil wars in, V. 95.

Flanders, the nobility of, make war on the men of Ghent, V. 170.

Flanders, the earl of, ſlain at the battle of Crecy, II. 168.

————, Lewis earl of, betrothed, through the conſtraint of the Flemings, to Iſabella, daughter of the king of England, II. 206.—Eſcapes into France, 207.—Marries the daughter of the duke of Brabant, 251.—Detains an ambaſſador from the king of France to the king of Scotland, V. 62.—Supports the cauſe of pope Urban in his dominions, againſt the Clementiſts, 82.—Endeavours

Endeavours to put down the Whitehoods, which had been revived at Ghent, 112.—Collects a force to make war on them, 125.—Makes peace with them, 143.—Comes to Ghent at the entreaty of the inhabitants, 156.—Endeavours to prevail on them to lay aside the Whitehoods, 159.—Causes John Pruniaux to be beheaded, 168.—Goes to Bruges at the request of the inhabitants, 284.—Renews the war with the men of Ghent, 285.—Besieges the town, 293.—Defeats the men of Ghent under Rassa de Harzelle, and burns a body of them in the church of Nevele, 303.—Besieges again the town of Ghent, VI. 3.—Defeated by the men of Ghent at Bruges, 96.—Escapes with great difficulty to Lisle, 108.—Applies to the king of France for assistance, 156.—Becomes an object of hatred to the English, 259.—Applies to the duke of Burgundy for assistance to oppose the bishop of Norwich, 282.—Dies at St. Omer, 338.—The ceremony of his funeral, 339.

Flemings, the, under Colin Donnequin, defeated at Cassel by Philip of Valois, I. 80.

——— under Jacob von Artaveld, promise to assist Edward the Third against the king of France, I. 163.—Remain firm to their alliance, notwithstanding the solicitations of the king of France, 180.

Flemings, the, under Robert d'Artois, flee in confuſion from before St. Omer, I. 245.

———, the, refuſe to diſinherit the earl of Flanders, II. 97.—Conſtrain him to be betrothed to the daughter of the king of England, 205.—Beſiege the town of Aire, 215.—Defeated by the Engliſh off the iſland of Bas, IV. 142.—Make peace with the king of England, 143.

Foix, Gaſton Phœbus, count of, his paſſion for dogs, I. xv.—Defeats the infamous Jacquerie of Beauvoiſes, with great ſlaughter, at Meaux, II. 393.—Viſits the prince of Wales at Tarbes, VII. 127.—Remits, at the entreaty of the princeſs of Wales, ſixty thouſand francs of the ranſom of the count d'Armagnac, 128.—Takes the town of Caſſeres from the Armagnacs, 142.—His riches and liberality, 159.—Murders ſir Peter Arnaut, 177.

Foix, the count de, obtains Malvoiſin from the king of France as a gift, 180.—Origin of the wars between him and the Armagnacs, 188.—His character and manner of life, 193.—Kills his ſon and heir Gaſton, 206.—His manner of keeping the feaſt of St. Nicholas, 212.—Rapidly and in a ſecret manner informed of the battle of Aljubarota, 292.—Grants permiſſion to the French army to paſs through his territories, on their way to Caſtille, VIII. 196.—Magnificently entertains the duke of Bourbon on his

his return towards France, IX. 34.—Prevents the count d'Armagnac from ſucceeding in his attempt to purchaſe the forts occupied by the free companies, 45.—Marries his ward, the daughter of the count of Boulogne, to the duke of Berry, 343.—Does homage to the king of France at Toulouſe for the county of Foix, X. 58.—His death, 289.—And funeral, 302.

Foix, Evan of, burnt to death at a maſked dance in Paris, XI. 74.

Fontenay le Comte, the caſtle of, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 198.

Forgasse, Laurence, an ambaſſador from Portugal to England, relates to the duke of Lancaſter the events which had happened in Portugal after the departure of the earl of Cambridge, VII. 372.

St. Forget, the caſtle of, taken by ſir Walter de Paſcal, VII. 308.

Forsath, in Gaſcony, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

Fouage, the nature of the tax ſo called, III. 335. *note.*

France, the kingdom of, ſuffers by famine, II. 421.

Friesland, invaded by the count of Hainault, XI. 275.

Froissart, ſir John, memoirs of his life, I. i.—Undertakes, at the entreaty of ſir Robert Namur, to write the hiſtory of his own

times, ii.—Preſents part of his work to queen Philippa of England, iii.—His early attachment to romance, iv.—Appointed ſecretary to queen Philippa, vii.—His mode of obtaining materials for his work, ix. VIII. 292.—His journey into Scotland, I. x.—Loſes his patroneſs queen Philippa, xii.—His diſſipation at Leſtines, xiii.—His papers ſeized by order of the duke of Anjou, xiii.—Viſits the count de Foix, xv. VII. 111.—His obituary, I. xxxii.—Eſſay on his works, xxxv.—Plan of his hiſtory, xxxvi.—The time he employed in writing it, xli.—The pains he took in compoſing it, xlviii.—Remarks on his chronology, lii.—Criticiſm on his hiſtory, lix.—The charge of partiality made againſt him examined and refuted, lix.—Cautions to be obſerved in reading his hiſtory, lxix.—His faults and beauties, lxxii.—His character, by Montagne, lxxvi.—Editions of his chronicles, lxxvi.—Diſſertation on his poetry, xcvii.—His paradiſe of love, xcviii.—His horologe amoureuſe, ci.—His le dit de la marguerite, ciii.—His paſtoral, ciii.—His rondeaus, cv.—Specimens of his poetry, cix.—His preface to his chronicles, I. 1.—His reaſons for viſiting the count de Foix, VII. 111.—Sets out for Bearn, in company with ſir Eſpaign du Lyon, who informs him

him of many particulars relative to the wars in Guienne, &c. 132.—Arrives at Orthes, 192.—Becomes acquainted with the Baſtot de Mauleon, 214.—His deſcription of the manners of the Engliſh and Gaſcons in his time, 324.—Travels to Middleburgh, in Zealand, 362.—Receives information relative to the affairs of Portugal, 363.—Is informed of the particulars of the arreſt of ſir Oliver de Cliſſon by the duke of Brittany, VIII. 293.—Returns to France from Bearn, in company with the counteſs de Boulogne, IX. 346.—Goes to Holland, 350.—Returns to Paris to witneſs Iſabella's public entrance into that city, 351.—Viſits England in the reign of Richard the Second, XI. 127.—Preſents his book of love poems to the king, 153.

G.

Gabelle, the, a tax upon ſalt, impoſed through France, II. 282.

Galande, the caſtle of, in Brittany, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.

Garliz, Gomez, beheaded by order of don Pedro, III. 321.

Gars, the abbe de, beheaded at Amiens, II. 420.

Gascons, the, oppoſe the attempt of the prince of Wales to impoſe a hearth tax on the country, III. 343, 364.

Gascons, the, their manners in the time of Froiſſart, VII. 324.

Geneva, the cardinal de, elected pope during the life-time of Urban the Sixth, V. 80.

Genoa, its ſtate and condition in the time of Froiſſart, VII. 328.

Genoese, the, raiſe a large army to invade Barbary, X. 127.—Beſiege the town of Africa, 195.—Break up their expedition, 240.

Gente, ſir Guirebert, a citizen of Ghent, killed for having endeavoured to make peace between the town and the earl of Flanders, VI. 13.

Genville, the earl of, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

St. George, the chapel of, at Windſor, founded by Edward the Third, II. 46.

Germany, the emperor of, attends a great aſſembly at Rheims, with the king of France, to conſult upon means to reſtore the union of the church, XII. 35.—Depoſed, 196.

Ghent, the town of, beſieged by the earl of Flanders, V. 293. VI. 3.

Ghent, the men of, put to death Jacob von Artaveld, II. 101.—Revive the cuſtom of the Whitehoods, and elect John Lyon their captain, V. 104.—Apply to the earl of Flanders

Flanders to preſerve their franchiſes, 110. —Murder the bailiff of Ghent, 114.— Endeavour to make their peace with the earl, 120.—Enter into alliance with other towns of Flanders, 128.—Chooſe new leaders, after the death of John Lyon, 131.— Enter into alliance with the town of Ypres, 133.—Beſiege Oudenarde, 134.—March to attack the earl of Flanders, in Dendremonde, 136.—Make peace with the earl, 143.—Take the town of Oudenarde, 162. —Surrender it to the earl's forces, 167.— Deſtroy the houſes of the nobility, 169.— Put to death John Roule, one of their commanders, 290.—Take ſeveral towns in Flanders, 297.—Defeated with great ſlaughter at Nevile, where ſeveral hundreds of them are burnt in a church, 303.—Beſiege Courtray, 309.—Greatly diſtreſſed for proviſions, but relieved by the men of Liege, VI. 70.—Defeat the earl of Flanders at Bruges, 96.—Take the town of Bruges and ſeveral others, 98 et ſeq.—Beſiege Oudenarde, 117.—Endeavour to form an alliance with England, 136.—Defeated at the paſs of Commines, under Peter du Bois, 189.—Defeated, under Philip von Artaveld, at the battle of Roſebecque, 226.— Endeavour to make peace with the earl, 245.—Take the town of Ardembourg, 257. —Aſſiſt the Engliſh at the ſiege of Ypres, 288.—Defeat a party of the French at Ardem-

Ardembourg, 386.—Take Damme, VII. 32.—Make peace with the duke of Burgundy, the heir of Flanders, 96.

Glocester, the duke of, [for the preceding particulars of this prince see Buckingham, the earl of,] his creation, VIII. 118.—Confederates with the duke of York and others againſt Richard the Second and his council, 307.—Defeats the king's forces, under the duke of Ireland, near Oxford, 355.—Thwarts the king in his intentions of making peace with the king of France, X. 279.—Plots the deſtruction of the king, 344.—Inſtigates the Londoners to petition for a repeal of the war taxes, 345.—Arreſted by order of the king, 364.—Put to death at Calais, XII. 27.

Gomegines, the lord of, defeated and taken priſoner on his way to join the king of England before Rheims, III. 21.

Goodman, James, choſen leader of the infamous Jacquerie of Beauvoiſis, II. 389.

Goy la Foret, the caſtle of, taken by ſir Walter Manny, II. 7.—Surrenders to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.

Gramat, the town of, taken by ſir John Chandos, III. 441.

Grammont, the town of, in Flanders, taken by the lord d'Anghein, VI. 3.

Grave, the town of, beſieged by the Brabanters, IX. 153.

Gravelines, the town of, taken by the biſhop of Norwich, VI. 271.

Gravelle, the lord of, beheaded at Rouen, II. 290.

Gregory the Eleventh, pope, elected at Avignon, IV. 115.—Endeavours to make peace between the kings of France and England, 247.—Removes to Rome, 281.—His death, 360.

Griffith, a Welſhman, commands a troop of the free companies, and pillages ſeveral places in France, II. 381.

Gris, James le, killed in a duel at Paris by ſir John de Carogne, VIII. 126.

Gueldres, the duke of, promiſes to aſſiſt the king of England againſt France, III. 418.—Enters into an alliance with England, VIII. 262. IX. 78.—Sends an inſulting defiance to the king of France, VIII. 263.—Endeavours to obtain poſſeſſion of three caſtles belonging to his duchy, which had been ſold to the duke of Brabant, IX. 77.—Obtains poſſeſſion of Grave, 153.—Defeats the Brabanters at the bridge of Raveſtein, 212.—Makes peace with the king of France and the ducheſs of Brabant, 303.—Taken priſoner in Pruſſia, 325.—Delivered by the Teutonic knights, 326.—Returns to Pruſſia to keep his faith with his capturer, and obtains his liberty, 327.

Guerrande, the town of, taken by the forces of the lord Charles of Blois, I. 312.

Guesclin,

Guesclin, ſir Bertrand du, choſen commander of the French forces in Normandy, III. 148. —Defeats the forces of the king of Navarre at the battle of Cocherel, 155.—Obtains poſſeſſion of the caſtle of Roulleboiſe, 162.—Goes to the aſſiſtance of the lord Charles of Blois, 173.—Taken priſoner at the battle of Auray, 193.—Ranſomed, 216.—Leads an army into Spain, 219.—Appointed conſtable of Caſtille, 224.—Goes to the aſſiſtance of Henry of Caſtille againſt don Pedro and the prince of Wales, 273.—Captured at the battle of Navarete, 313.—Obtains his ranſom, 338.—Joins king Henry before Toledo, 350.—Again appointed conſtable of Spain, 360.—Joins the duke of Anjou in an expedition againſt the prince of Wales, IV. 73.—Invades the viſcounty of Limoges, 101.—Takes the town of Yrier, 102.—Appointed conſtable of France, 107.—Defeats the forces of ſir Robert Knolles at Pont-valin, 113.—Takes the caſtle of Monmorillon and ſeveral other places in Poitou, 173 et ſeq.—Heads an army againſt Brittany, 220.—Takes the town of Rennes and ſeveral others, 221 et ſeq.—Sent with a large army againſt the king of Navarre, 291.—Makes war on Brittany, V. 75.—Dies at Auvergne, 175. —The etymology of his name, VIII. 297. —See alſo 300, *note*.

Guesclin, ſir Oliver du, made priſoner by the garriſon of Cherbourg, IV. 294. V. 27.

Guignes, the town of, taken by the Engliſh, II. 271.

Guincamp, the town of, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.

Guiſtelles, the lord de, appeaſes an inſurrection at Bruges againſt the French troops, VIII. 114.

H.

Hainault, the country of, invaded by the French, I. 166, 188.—In danger of being pillaged by the Bretons belonging to the army of Charles the Sixth, of France, VI. 236.

Hainault, ſir John of, offers his aſſiſtance to Iſabella, queen of Edward the Second, I. 20.—Eſcorts her to England, 25.—Aſſiſts her at the ſiege of Briſtol, 28.—Aſſiſts the king of England in an expedition againſt the Scots, 39.—His territories invaded by the king of France, 167.—Appointed governor of Hainault during the abſence of the earl in England, 178.—Quits the allegiance of England for that of France, II. 105.

Hainault, William earl of, father of Philippa, queen of England, his death, I. 120.

Hainault, William earl of, ſon of the above, ſends his defiance to the king of France, I. 173.—Takes the town of Auberton, &c. 177.—Viſits England, 178.—Germany, 198.—Returns to Hainault, 200.—Aſſembles a large army to raiſe the ſiege of Thin l'Eveque, 201.—Burns the town of Seclin, &c. 217.—Takes the town of St. Amand, 236.—Utrecht, II. 103.—Slain in Frieſland, 104.

Hainault, the count of, raiſes an army to invade Frieſland, XI. 262.—Over-runs the country, and diſbands his forces, 279.

Harcourt, the earl of, beheaded at Rouen, II. 290.

Harcourt, the young earl of, makes peace with the duke of Normandy, II. 447.

Harcourt, ſir Godfrey de, baniſhed from France, II. 94.—Accompanies the king of England in an expedition into Normandy, 125.—Created one of the marſhals of his army, 126.—Defeats a body of men from Amiens on their march to join the king of France, 145.—Carries on the war in Normandy for the king of England, 361.—Defeated and ſlain at the battle of Coutantin, 365.

Harcourt, ſir John, returns to France from England, where he had been as hoſtage for king John, III. 382.

Harleſtone, ſir William, appointed governor of Cherbourg, IV. 297.—Defeats a body of French

French troops under ſir William de Bourdes, whom he captures, 301.

Harpres, the town of, burnt by the French, I. 170.

Harſley, William de, a phyſician of France, cures king Charles the Sixth of France of his firſt derangement, XI. 61.—Dies at Laon, 62.

Harzelle, Raſſe de, choſen one of the commanders of the Whitehoods of Ghent, V. 131.—Takes ſeveral towns in Flanders, 296 et ſeq.—Killed in an engagement with the earl of Flanders, 303.

Harzelles, the lord de, killed at Ghent, VI. 365.

Hawkwood, ſir John, an Engliſh commander, enters into the ſervice of Urban the Sixth in Italy, V. 93.

Helly, ſir James de, taken priſoner by the Turks at the battle of Nicopoli, XI. 300.—Sent to France with information of the defeat of the army of John of Burgundy, 308.—Obtains his liberty, 323.—Returns to France, 337.

Hennebon, the town of, in Brittany, taken by the earl of Montford, as duke of Brittany, I. 261.—Beſieged by the lord Charles of Blois, 300. II. 8.—Taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 224.

Henry the Fourth, of England, crowned during the life-time of Richard the Second, XII. 162.

Henry de Trastamare, enters Caſtille with a large army to dethrone his brother don Pedro, III. 219.—Acknowledged and crowned king of Caſtille by the Spaniards, 222.—Takes meaſures to oppoſe don Pedro and the prince of Wales, 243.—Defeated at the battle of Navarete, 315.—Eſcapes to Arragon, 325.—Makes war on the prince of Wales in Aquitaine, 328.—Makes war on don Pedro, aſſiſted by the king of Arragon, 346.—Defeats don Pedro near Montiel, 354.—Puts him to death, 359.—Obtains the ſubmiſſion of Caſtille, 360.—Enters into alliance with the king of France, IV. 148.—Makes war on the king of Navarre, 293.—Concludes a peace with him, V. 48.—His death, 50.

Henry, the infant of Spain, marries the daughter of the duke of Lancaſter, IX. 303.—Crowned king of Caſtille, 256.

Herielle, the caſtle of, taken by the king of Navarre, II. 411.

Holland, ſir John, kills lord Ralph Stafford, VII. 61.

Hestages, ſent to England for king John of France, III. 66.

Huet, ſir Walter, killed in a ſkirmiſh in Brittany, IV. 242.

Hungary, the king of, applies to the court of France, for aſſiſtance againſt the ſultan Bajazet, XI. 204.—Croſſes the Danube with a large

a large army, accompanied by John of Burgundy and his forces, 232.---Takes the town of Comecte by ſtorm, 234.—Beſieges Nicopoli, 237.—His army defeated be Bajazet, 297.

Huntingdon, the earl of, proclaims a tournament at Oxford with the view of murdering king Henry, XII. 180.—Slain at Cirenceſter, 185.

I.

St. Iago de Compostella, the town of, in Galicia, taken by the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 24.

Innocent the Sixth, pope, elected at Avignon, II. 273.—Endeavours to make peace between the kings of France and England, and the kings of France and Navarre, 302.—Orders a croiſade to be preached againſt the free companies, III. 88.—His death, 97.

Insurrection in Paris againſt Charles the Sixth, VI. 14.

——— at Rouen, VI. 17.

———, a general, in England, in favour of the earl of Derby againſt Richard the Second, XII. 109.

Interview between the king of Portugal and the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 70.

——— between the kings of France and England at Ardres, XI. 285.

Ireland, the earl of Oxford created duke of, VIII. 118.—Incurs the hatred of the people of England, 307.—Obtains a divorce from his wife, the lady Philippa, 311.—Endeavours to counteract the meaſures of the commiſſioners of accounts and the new council of ſtate, 334.—Marches from Briſtol towards London as lieutenant for the king, 346.—Defeated near Oxford by the Londoners, under the duke of Gloceſter, 355.—Flies the kingdom, 356.—Invited to France, IX. 143.—Ordered thence, X. 10.

Iriſh, their manners and mode of warfare, XI. 115.

Iſabella, queen of Edward the Second, declared ineligible to the crown of France, I. 9.—Incurs the hatred of ſir Hugh Spencer, 11.—Lays her grievances before her brother, Charles the Fourth of France, and ſolicits his advice and aſſiſtance, 13.—Commanded to quit France, 18.—Lands in England with a conſiderable force, and is joined by the Engliſh barons, 26.—Takes her huſband priſoner at Briſtol, 30.—Confines him in Berkeley caſtle, 31.—Enters London amidſt great rejoicings, 32.—Obtains the coronation

coronation of her ſon Edward the Third, 35.—Suſpected of being pregnant by ſir Roger Mortimer, 83.—Committed to priſon by order of the council, 84.—Dies in London, III. 101.

Isabella, daughter of Edward the Third of England, betrothed to Lewis earl of Flanders, II. 206.

Isabella, the lady, of Bavaria, married to Charles the Sixth of France, VII. 34.—Makes her public entry into Paris, IX. 352.

Isabella, daughter of Charles the Sixth, betrothed to Richard the Second of England, XI. 224.—Delivered to him by king Charles at Ardres, 288.—Married to him at Calais, 289.

J.

Jacquerie, the riſe of an infamous body of men in Beauvoiſis under this appellation, II. 387.—Their atrocities, 388.—A large number of them deſtroyed by the king of Navarre, 390.—Thouſands of them ſlain at Meux by the earl of Foix and the captal of Buch, 392.

James, king of Cyprus, intereſts himſelf to obtain the liberation of John of Burgundy and his companions, who were priſoners in Turkey, XI. 367.

St. Jean d'Angely, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 182.—Surrenders to the French, 270.—IV. 190.

Jews, the, perſecuted through Europe, II 264.

John, ſon of Philip of Valois, crowned king of France, II. 267.—Makes his public entry into Paris, 268.—Prevents a combat between the duke of Lancaſter and the duke of Brunſwick, 272.—Takes poſſeſſion of the lands of the king of Navarre in Normandy, 279.—Coins florins of gold, which were called *lamb florins*, 280.—Marches an army againſt the king of England, 284.—Gives the duchy of Normandy to his eldeſt ſon, the dauphin of Vienne, 285.—Arreſts the king of Navarre, 289.—Marches an army againſt the duke of Lancaſter, 292.—Collects an army to oppoſe the prince of Wales, 293.—Defeated and taken priſoner at the battle of Poitiers, 337.—Surrenders to the prince of Wales, 341.—Embarked for England, 368.—Rides through London, 369.—Confined in Windſor caſtle, 370.—Enters into a treaty with the king of England and the prince of Wales, 458.—The French council refuſe to ratify it, 459.—Sent to the Tower of London, 475.—Obtains his liberty, and returns to France, III. 65.—Magnificently entertained at Paris, 79.—Quarrels with the king of Navarre, 95.—Viſits the pope at

at Avignon, 96.—Puts on the croſs, 104.—Returns to England, 119.—His death, 126.—Buried at St. Denis, 136.—See alſo 137, *note*.

John, don, ſon of Henry de Traſtamare, crowned king of Caſtille, V. 50.—Makes war on Portugal, 324.—Takes the field againſt the king of Portugal and the earl of Cambridge, VI. 61.—Makes peace with the king of Portugal, 63.—Marries his daughter, 67.—Sends his defiance to the new king of Portugal, and raiſes an army to make war on him, VII. 121, 385.—Beſieges Liſbon, 122, 386.—Applies to the king of France for aſſiſtance, 124.—Abandons the ſiege of Liſbon, 251.—Takes the field againſt the king of Portugal, 264.—Defeated, with great ſlaughter, at the battle of Aljubarota, 285, 404.—Enters into a truce with the king of Portugal, 291.—Applies to France for aſſiſtance againſt the king of Portugal and the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 48.—Grants permiſſion to the duke of Lancaſter to ſend his men into Caſtille to recruit their health, IX. 15.—Regains poſſeſſion of Galicia after the departure of the duke of Lancaſter, 138.—Sends ambaſſadors to the duke of Lancaſter, to demand his daughter for the infanta of Spain, 177.—Makes peace with the duke, 331.—Marries his ſon to the lady

Catherine of Lancaſter, 338.—His death, X. 256.

John, don, grand maſter of Avis, declared king of Portugal, VI. 67. VII. 117, 380.—Crowned, 119, 391.—Sends ambaſſadors to England to ſolicit the alliance of Richard the Second, 123, 237.—Raiſes an army to make war on the king of Caſtille, 260.—Defeats him at the battle of Aljubarota, 285, 404.—Enters into a truce with him, 291.—Sends ambaſſadors to ſolicit the aſſiſtance of the duke of Lancaſter, 366.—Receives favourable anſwers, VIII. 3.—Writes friendly letters to the duke of Lancaſter on his arrival in Galicia, 48.—Has an interview with him, 70.—Marries the lady Philippa, daughter of the duke of Lancaſter, 178.—Takes the field againſt the king of Caſtille, 268.—Burns the town of Santaren, 280.—Takes Ferrol, 284.—Forms a junction with the duke of Lancaſter at Orenſe, 370.—Diſmiſſes his army, IX. 19.

John of Gaunt, earl of Richmond, created duke of Lancaſter, III. 109.

John, friar, de la Rochtaillade, delivers an apologue before the cardinals concerning the papacy, VII. 353.

Joigny, the earl of, captured by the prince of Wales, II. 304.—Taken priſoner at the battle of Auray, III. 192.

Joigny, the lord Raoul de, taken prisoner by the prince of Wales, II. 304.

Joinville, the fort of, taken by the free-booting companies, III. 73.

Jouel, sir John, joins the king of Navarre, III. 133.—Slain at the battle of Cocherel in Normandy, 158.

Jouy, the count de, burnt to death at a masked dance at Paris, XI. 72.

Jugon, the town of, taken by the lord Charles of Blois through treachery, II. 15.—Retaken by the lord John de Montford, III. 202.—Surrenders to sir Bertrand du Guesclin, IV. 222.

St. Julien, Louis de, takes the town of Chatelheraut, IV. 57.

Juliers, William count de, made duke of Gueldres, IX. 59.

Juliers, the duke of, promises assistance to the king of England against France, III. 418.—Defeats the duke of Brabant with great slaughter, IX. 58.—Makes his peace with the emperor, 73.—Makes his submission to the king of France, 291.—Makes peace between the duke of Gueldres and the king of France, 303.

K.

Kent, the earl of, beheaded through the jealousy of sir Robert Mortimer, I. 83.

Knights Bachelors, the signification of their title, I. 240. *note.*

Knights Bannerets, an account of their title and rank, I. 68. *note.*

Knights of the Garter, the order instituted at Windsor by Edward the Third, II. 45.—The names of the first knights, 46, *note.*

Knights of the Hare, the origin of their title, I. 160.

Knights of the Star, the first of that order, II. 270.

Knolles, sir Robert, commands a troop of the free companies in Normandy, II. 382.—Makes an incursion into Berry and Auvergne, 464.—Goes to the assistance of the prince of Wales, III. 431.—Appointed captain of the prince of Wales's companies, 432.—Summoned to England by king Edward, IV. 66.—Leads an army into Picardy, 82.—Enters into a composition to save the country from being pillaged, 85.—Defeated at Pont Valin by sir Bertrand du

du Gueſclin, 113.—Retreats into Brittany, 114.—Some account of his life, 138, *note*.—Incurs the diſpleaſure of the king of England, 139.—Reinſtated in his favour 140.—Appointed governor of Brittany, 222.—Captures the lord de Mauvoiſin, V. 222.

L.

Lac Le, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

Lamb florins, firſt coined, II. 280.

Lambe, John, aſſaſſinates Evan of Wales at Mortmain-ſur-mer, V. 6.

Lancaster, Thomas, earl of, beheaded through the enmity of ſir Hugh Spencer, I. 11.

Lancaster, Henry, earl of, brother of the former, joins the party of queen Iſabella againſt Edward the Second and the Spencers, I. 26.

Lancaster, the duke of, ſon of earl Henry, lands in Coutantin to aſſiſt Philip of Navarre againſt the king of France, II. 291.—Takes the town of Verneuil, 292.—Beſieges Rennes, 374.—Leads a large army into Picardy, 470.—Perſuades the king of England to make peace with the duke of Normandy, III. 43.—Dies of the plague, 94.

Lancaster, John of Gaunt, duke of, his creation, III. 100.—Embarks with a large army for Aquitaine, 261.—Leads a large army into France, 452.—Returns to England, IV. 37.—Embarks with a large force for Aquitaine, 73.—Appointed governor of Aquitaine, 120.—Takes Mont Paon, 128.—Marries the lady Conſtance, daughter of don Pedro of Caſtille, 147.—Returns to England, 149.—Leads an army through France to Bourdeaux, 230, et ſeq.—Enters into a truce with the French, and returns to England, 254.—Made regent of England, during the minority of Richard the Second, 283.—Leads an army into Brittany, 295.—Beſieges St. Malo, 295, 382. Abandons the ſiege, V. 24.—Informed of the death of don Henry, king of Caſtille, 57.—Sent to treat with the Scots, 329.—Makes a truce with them, 366.—Refuſed admiſſion into Berwick Caſtle, 367.—Returns to Scotland with the earl of Douglas, 369.—Sent for by king Richard, 373.—Offended with the earl of Northumberland, 377.—Appeaſed by the king, 379.—Obtains an army to make war on Caſtille, VIII. 2.—Embarks for Portugal, 5.—Forces the French to raiſe the blockade of Breſt, 11.—Arrives at Corunna, 15.—Takes the town of St. Iago de Compoſtella and ſeveral others in Galicia, 24, et ſeq.—Makes war on Arragon, 131.—Marries his daughter,

daughter, the lady Philippa, to the king of Portugal, 177.—Takes the towns of Entença, &c. 188, et ſeq.—Suffers greatly from the heat of the climate, 368.—Forms a junction with the king of Portugal, 370.—Paſſes the Duero, 373.—Diſpirited by the ſickneſs of himſelf and army, IX. 5.—Diſbands his men, 10.—Obtains permiſſion from the king of Caſtille for them to recruit their health in his towns, 15.—Quits Galicia and returns to Bayonne, 40, 141.—Applies to England for freſh aſſiſtance, 142.—Betroths his daughter Catharine to the infanta of Spain, 303.—Makes peace with the king of Caſtille, 331.—Marries his daughter to the infanta, 338.—Receives the duchy of Aquitaine as a gift from king Richard and his council, XI. 119.—Embarks for Aquitaine, 123.—Ordered to return in conſequence of the remonſtrances of the towns of Aquitaine againſt the king's gift, 168.—Marries his concubine, 225.—Offended with king Richard for the murder of the duke of Gloceſter, XII. 31.—Makes peace with him, 33.—His death, 83.

Lancaster, the ducheſs of, takes her daughter to Caſtille, and marries her to the infanta, IX. 338.—Finds the bones of her father, don Pedro, and has them buried at Seville, 339.

Langon, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.—Surrenders to the duke of Anjou, IV. 257.

Langurant, the lord de, captured by the duke of Anjou, IV. 314.—Turns to the French intereſt, 318.—Slain near Cadillac, V. 54.

Launony, John de, one of the commanders of the men of Ghent, ſlain at the church of Nevele, V. 304.

Lauton, ſir John, ſlain before La Rochelle, IV. 161.

Le Clerc, Arnold, one of the commanders of the men of Ghent, defeats a party of the Flemiſh nobility at Oudenarde, V. 312.—Defeated and ſlain at Bercham, 314.

Leon, king of Armenia, arrives in France, after loſing his dominions, VII. 327.—Relieved by the king of France, 347.—His death, 348, *note*.—Endeavours to negociate a peace between the kings of France and England, VIII. 105.

Leon, ſir Hervé de, captured before Vannes, II. 36.—Liberated by king Edward, 48.—Dies at Paris, 50.

Letter, from Edward the Black Prince to the biſhop of Worceſter, after the battle of Poitiers, II. 353, *note*.

Letter, ſent by the king of England to Aquitaine, IV. 54.

Lewis, the lord, of Spain, raiſes the ſiege of Hennebon, I. 310.—Takes the town of Denant, &c. 312.—Defeated at Quimperle by ſir Walter Manny, II. 2.—Engages lord Robert d'Artois at ſea, 23.

Libourne, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 66.

Liege, the biſhop of, endeavours to make peace between the earl of Flanders and the biſhop of Norwich, VI. 292.

Lieux, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

Lignac, ſir Helion de, ſent to treat with the duke of Lancaſter for the marriage of his daughter to the duke of Berry, IX. 159.

Lignac, ſir William de, ſeneſchal of Saintonge, takes the caſtle of Aigle, VII. 7.—Accompanies the duke of Bourbon to the aſſiſtance of the king of Caſtille, 155.—Arrives at Burgos, 214.

Limoges, the town of, ſurrenders to the duke of Berry, IV. 93.—Taken by ſtorm by the prince of Wales, 103.

Linde, the town of, beſieged by the duke of Anjou, IV. 78.—Delivered by the captal of Buch, 79.

Linieres, ſir Maubrun de, dies at Noya, IX. 20.

Lionel, earl of Ulſter, created duke of Clarence, III. 100.—Marries the daughter of the lord Galeas of Milan, 339.—His death, 361.

Lisbon,

Liſbon, the city of, beſieged by the king of Caſtille, VII. 122, 386.

Liſle, the earl of, makes war in Gaſcony for the king of France, I. 219.—Beſieges Auberoche, II. 67.—Taken priſoner by the earl of Derby, 72.

St. Lo, the town of, taken by the Engliſh under king Edward, II. 133.

London, the biſhop of, appointed to accompany the duke of Lancaſter in an expedition againſt Spain, VI. 264.

Londoners, the, diſſatisfied with king Richard and his council, apply to the duke of Gloceſter to take upon him the government of the realm, VIII. 313.—Wait upon the king at Windſor to lay their grievances before him, and to demand redreſs, 316.—Prevail upon the king to fix a day to examine into the conduct of thoſe who had had the management of the finances, 319.—Defeat the duke of Ireland and the king's forces, near Oxford, 352.—Wait upon the king, at the inſtigation of the duke of Gloceſter, to demand the repeal of the taxes which had been impoſed to carry on the war with France, XI. 346.—Take part with the earl of Derby in his quarrel with the earl marſhal, XII. 50.—Riſe in favour of the earl of Derby againſt Richard the Second, 112.—Send the archbiſhop of Canterbury to France to bring back the earl of Derby, 115.

Longueval, ſir William de, takes the caſtle of Mont Paon, IV. 122.—Surrenders it to the duke of Lancaſter, 128.

Lorraine, the duke of, ſlain at the battle of Crecy, II. 168.

Louis, ſir Lancelot de, mortally wounded at Cherbourg, V. 73.

Louis, de Valois, marries, by procuration, Margaret of Hungary, VII. 23.

Lourde, the caſtle of, beſieged by the duke of Anjou, VII. 58.

———, the garriſon of, take ſeveral places in France, VII. 135, et ſeq.

Louvaine, ſir Nicholas, governor of Abbville, taken priſoner by ſir Hugh de Chatillon, III. 379.

Louvier, the town of, taken by the Engliſh under Edward the Third, II. 142.

Luna, the cardinal de, elected pope at Avignon, under the title of Benedict, XI. 112.

Lusignan, the town of, in Poitou, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 181.—Surrenders to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 214.

Lusignan, king of Cyprus, arrives at Avignon, III. 103.—Viſits Germany to exhort the emperor to join the cruſade againſt the Saracens, 106.—Viſits the king of Navarre, 110.—Endeavours to prevail on the king of England to put on the croſs, 114.—Goes to Aquitaine to ſolicit the prince of

of Wales to do the ſame, 117.—Returns to Paris, 135.—Put to death, VII. 329.

Luſſac, the town and caſtle of, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 173.

Luxembourg, ſir Peter de, his body ſaid to ſhew miraculous powers, IX. 86.

Luzumont, the caſtle of, in Brittany, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.

Lyon, John, a citizen of Ghent, revives the cuſtom of the Whitehoods, V. 104.—Inſtigates the men of Ghent to demand of the earl of Flanders the preſervation of their franchiſes, 110.—Burns and pillages the caſtle of Andreghein, belonging to the earl, 119.—Dies at Ardembourg, 130.

Lyon, ſir Eſpaing du, accompanies Froiſſart to Bearn, and relates to him many particulars relative to the wars in Guienne, &c. VII. 133.

M.

St. Mahé, the town of, in Brittany, ſurrenders to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.

Maillart, John, a citizen of Paris, prevents the city being betrayed by the provoſt of merchants, II. 403.

Majorca, James, king of, applies to the prince of Wales for his aſſiſtance againſt the king of Arragon, III. 261.—Accompanies the prince and don Pedro into Spain, 276.—Taken priſoner at Valedolid, by king Henry of Caſtille, 346.—Ranſomed by his wife, the queen of Naples, IV. 143.—Makes war on the king of Arragon, 144.—Dies at Val di Soria, 145.

St. Maixant, the town of, in Poitou, taken by the duke of Berry, IV. 194.

Maleval, ſir Louis de, turns to the French intereſt, IV. 53.

St. Malo, the town of, ſurrenders to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.—Beſieged by the duke of Lancaſter, V. 2.

Malvoison, the caſtle of, taken by the duke of Anjou, VII. 157.

Mandarant, the caſtle of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

Manners of the Engliſh and Gaſcons in the time of Froiſſart, VII. 324.

Manny, ſir Giles, killed before Cambray, I. 169.

Manny, ſir Walter, makes an incurſion into France, I. 137.—Sent with an Engliſh force into Brittany, to the aſſiſtance of the counteſs of Montford, 299.—Arrives at Hennebon, 307.—Retakes the caſtle of Conquet, 312.—Defeats the lord Lewis of Spain, at Quemperlé, II. 2.—Takes the caſtle of

Goy la Foret, 7.—Accompanies the earl of Derby into Gaſcony, 51.—Finds the ſepulchre of his father at La Reole, 83.—Defeats the French under ſir Geoffrey de Chargny, before Calais, 246.—Dies in London, IV. 150.

Mante, the town of, taken by the French under the lord de Boucicaut, III. 131.

Marans, the town of, in the Rochellois, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 198.

Marcel, Amerigot, takes the caſtle of Caſſuriel, and other places, in Auvergne, V. 76, et ſeq.—Takes by ſurpriſe the caſtle of Marquel, VI. 321.—Fortifies himſelf in La Roche Vandais, X. 140.—Beſieged by the viſcount de Meaux, 150.—Sends to England to ſolicit the duke of Lancaſter for aſſiſtance, 153.—During his abſence at Perigord, his fort ſurrenders, 177.—Betrayed by a relative, to whom he had applied for an aſylum, 182.—Beheaded at Paris, 185.

Marcel, Etienne, provoſt of the merchants of Paris, kills three knights in the apartment of the regent, II. 384.—Builds a wall round Paris, 391.—Killed by John Maillart while attempting to betray the city to the Engliſh and Navarrois, 404.

March, the earl of, taken priſoner by the Engliſh at the battle of Nevil's Croſs, II. 196.—Appointed conſtable of the Engliſh army under Edward the Third, III. 1.

Marchiennes,

Marchiennes, the monaſtery of, taken by the Hainaulters, I. 238.

Marchville, the caſtle of, taken by the duke of Burgundy, III. 166.

Marêt, John de, unjuſtly executed at Paris, VI. 254.

Margaret, counteſs of Hainault, takes poſſeſſion of the country, as her inheritance, after the death of Earl William, II. 104.

Margaret, of Hungary, married by procuration to Louis de Valois, VII. 23 —Forcibly married by Henry de Blancquefort, brother of the emperor of Germany, 48.

Marneil, ſir Raymond de, turns to the French intereſt, IV 53.—Taken priſoner by the Engliſh, 117.—Makes his eſcape, 118.

Marquel, the caſtle of, in Auvergne, taken by Amerigot Marcel, VI. 321.

Marriage, concluded between the children of Burgundy and thoſe of Hainault, VI. 378.

Marshal, the earl, of England, challenges the earl of Derby in the preſence of king Richard, XII. 44.—Baniſhed the kingdom, 56.—Dies at Venice, 195.

St. Maubert, the fort of, taken by the Engliſh under the lord Neville, V. 20.

Maubue, lord, beheaded at Rouen, II. 290.

Mauconseil, the caſtle of, taken by the king of Navarre, II. 411.—Beſieged by the duke of Normandy, 414.—Razed to the ground, 456.

Maudurant, Geronnet de, captured by ſir John de Bonnelance, IX. 101.—Taken to Montferrante, 102.—Ranſomed, 107. — Gains poſſeſſion of the town of Montferrante for Peter le Bearnois, 118.

Mauléon, le Baſtot de, relates his adventures to Froiſſart, at Orthes, VII. 214.

Mauny, ſir Olivier de, makes the king of Navarre priſoner, III. 281.

St. Maur, the abbey of, on the Loire, taken by the Engliſh under the earl of Pembroke, IV. 31.

Mauvoiſin, lord de, captured by ſir Robert Knolles, V. 222.

Maxwell, ſir John, captures ſir Ralph Percy at the battle of Otterbourn, IX. 259

St. Mecaire, the town of, ſurrenders to the duke of Anjou, IV. 325.

Melrose, the abbey of, deſtroyed by Richard the Second, VII. 65.

Melval, lord Louis de, taken priſoner at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

Melun, the town of, on the Seine, beſieged by the duke of Normandy, II. 444.

Menstreworth, ſir John, with his followers, quits the army of ſir Robert Knolles, IV. 111. —Executed in London, 139.

Mercier, ſir John le, one of the miniſters of Charles the Sixth of France, committed to priſon during the regency of the duke of Burgundy,

Burgundy, XI. 42.—His property confiſcated, 50.—Releaſed from priſon, 190.

Mesclin, the little, captain of ſome free companies, put to death at Luxembourg, IX. 63.

Meulon, the town of, taken by the French under the lord de Boucicaut, III. 131.

Milhaud, the caſtle of, in Rouerge, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 136.

Mirabeau, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 181.

Miraculous appearances, ſaid to have been ſeen by the Saracens during the ſiege of Africa, X. 206.

Miramont, the caſtle of, taken by the duke of Normandy, II. 107.

Moissac, the town of, in Quercy, taken by the Engliſh under ſir John Chandos, III. 437.—Surrenders to the duke of Anjou, IV. 75.

Moncontour, the caſtle of, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 175.

Monmorillon, the caſtle of, in Poitou, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 173.

Monsac, the town of, taken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 257.

Monstier, lord Peter de, appointed chief of the cruſade againſt the free companies in France, III. 89.

Montacute, ſir William, created earl of Saliſbury, I. 104.

Montagn , his character of Froiſſart, I. lxxvi.

Montagu, lord William de, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

Montaubon, battle of, between ſir Guy d'Aſai and the free companies, III. 258.

Montbeliart, the earl of, invades the duchy of Burgundy, III. 169.

Montcontour, the caſtle of, in Poitou, taken by the Engliſh under lord Thomas Percy, IV. 133.

Montebourg, the town of, burnt and pillaged by the Engliſh under king Edward the Third, II. 128.

Montendre, the lord of, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

Montferrant, the town of, taken by ſtratagem by Perrot le Bearnois, IX. 118.

Montferrant, the marquis de, leads the free companies into Lombardy, III. 90.— Conquers ſeveral places from the lord of Milan, 91.

Montfort, the earl of, takes meaſures to ſecure to himſelf the duchy of Brittany, after the death of his brother, I. 253 — Takes the town of Breſt and ſeveral others, 257, et ſeq.—Does homage to the king of England for the duchy of Brittany, 265.— Summoned before the parliament of Paris, at

at the ſuit of the lord Charles of Blois, 266 —Beſieges the caſtle of Nantes, 273. —Captured by the French, 276.— Dies in the Louvre at Paris, 276.—[See this account corrected, 276, *note*.]

Montfort, the lord John de, defeats the forces of the lord Charles of Blois, at the battle of Auray, III. 194.—His behaviour on ſeeing the body of his adverſary, who had been ſlain in the battle, 197.—Takes Auray and other places, 202, et ſeq.—Makes peace with the king of France, and is acknowledged duke of Brittany, 207.—Marries the daughter of the princeſs of Wales, 208. —Applies to England for aſſiſtance againſt the king of France, IV. 208.—Retakes ſeveral places in Brittany, 267.—Beſieges Quimperlé, 270.—Diſbands his army, and retires to England, 272.—Returns to Brittany, V. 148.—Solicits king Richard for ſuccours, 178. — Excuſes himſelf to the earl of Buckingham, who had come to his aſſiſtance, for not meeting him on his march, 232.—Makes peace with the king of France, 274. — Arreſts ſir Oliver de Cliſſon in the caſtle of Ermine, and cauſes the expedition againſt England to be given up, VIII. 242.—Liberates ſir Oliver, 257. —Required by the king of France to explain his conduct towards the conſtable, and to deliver up to him the caſtle he had

taken from him as his ranſom, 302.—His anſwer, 304.—Diſregards the overtures made by the duke of Berry to gain him over to the French intereſt, IX. 136.—Enters into an alliance with England, 146.—With Navarre, 150.—Reſtores the caſtles of ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, 169.—Goes to Paris at the entreaty of the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, 185.—Makes his peace with the king of France, 190.—Returns to Brittany, 222.—Meets the king of France at Tours to make an amicable ſettlement of the differences exiſting between them, X. 320.—Agrees to marry his ſon to the daughter of the king of France and his daughter to John of Brittany, 333.—Grants an aſylum to ſir Peter de Craon after his attempt to murder ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, 379.—Involves himſelf in a war with the king of France, XI. 3.—Wages a deſtructive war againſt ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, 88.—Makes peace with him, 200.—Grants aſſiſtance to the earl of Derby to embark for England, XI. 124.—His death, 187.

Montfort, the counteſs de, carries on the war againſt the lord Charles of Blois after the capture of her huſband, I. 277.—Solicits aſſiſtance from England, 279.—Beſieged by the lord Charles of Blois in Hennibon, 300.—Diſplays great courage in the defence of the town, 301.—Enters into a truce with the lord Charles of Blois, and goes to England,

land, II. 16.– Returns to Brittany with reinforcements, under ſir Robert d'Artois, 25.—Her forces take the lord Charles of Blois priſoner at La Roche d'Errien, 213.

Montgis, the caſtle of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

Montlieu, the caſtle of, taken by the duke of Bourbon, VII. 8.

Montmorency, ſir Charles de, taken priſoner at Pont a Treſſin, I. 242.

Mont-paon, the caſtle of, ſurrenders to the French under ſir William de Longueval, IV. 122. —Retaken by the duke of Lancaſter, 128.

Montpellier, the towns and lordſhips of, belonging to the king of Navarre, ſeized by the French, IV. 369.

Montpezat, the village of, taken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 75.

Montpin, the fort of, taken by ſir Thomas Trivet, V. 35.

Montpouillant, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 89.

Montreuil Bonin, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II 183.

Montsegar, the village of, ſurrenders to the earl of Derby, II. 80.—Taken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 323.

Moray, Randolph, earl of, his death, I. 74.

Moray, the earl of, taken priſoner by the Engliſh before Newcaſtle upon Tyne, I. 284.— Exchanged for the earl of Saliſbury, 297.

Morbeque,

Morbeque, Denys de, captures king John at the battle of Poitiers, II. 337.

Moron, Caſtel, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 91.

Mortain, the town of, in Normandy, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 292.

Mortain ſur Mer, the town of, in Poitou, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 181.—Beſieged by Evan of Wales, IV. 333.—The ſiege raiſed by the Engliſh, V. 17.

Mortimer, the caſtle of, ſurrenders to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 215.

Mortimer, ſir Roger, ignominiouſly put to death, I. 83.

Mouſom, a French coin ſo called, the origin of its appellation, II. 360, *note*.

Mucident, the lord of, killed before Chargny in Dormois, III. 16.

Mucident, the lord of, taken priſoner by the duke of Anjou, IV. 314.—Turns to the French intereſt, 318.—Returns to the Engliſh party, V. 50.

Muros, the town of, in Galicia, ſurrenders to the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 172.

Murray, the earl of, captured by the Engliſh at the battle of Nevil's Croſs, II. 196.

Musgrave, ſir Thomas, defeated and captured by the Scots at Melroſe, IV. 352.

N.

Najara, the town of, taken by the prince of Wales, III. 316.

Namur,, ſir Philip de, ſlain at Dendremonde, V. 297.

Namur, ſir Robert de, does homage to the king of England before Calais, II. 208.—Promiſes to aſſiſt him againſt France, III 453.—Joins the Engliſh forces, under the duke of Lancaſter, before Tournehem, IV. 3.—Defeats a party of the French in a ſkirmiſh, 24.

Namur, ſir William de, gives the town of Sluys to the duke of Burgundy, in exchange for the country of Bethune, VII. 39.

Nantes, the town of, taken by the lord Charles of Blois, I. 275.—Beſieged by Edward the Third, II. 33.—Surrenders to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 229.—Beſieged by the earl of Buckingham, V. 243.

Naples, Joan, queen of, ſurrenders her dominions to pope Clement, V. 86.

Narbonne, the viſcount de, captured by the free companies before Montaubon, III. 258.

Naval engagement, before Sluys, between the navies of France and England, I. 209.—Between the Spaniards and the Engliſh under

under king Edward the Third, II. 257.—Off the iſland of Bas in Brittany, between the Engliſh and Flemings, IV. 141.—Before La Rochelle, between the earl of Pembroke and the Spaniards, IV. 156.

Navarete, the battle of, between the prince of Wales and don Henry of Caſtille, III. 305.

Navarre, Charles, king of, lands with a large army at Cherbourg, II. 281.—Arreſted by the king of France, 289.—Eſcapes from the caſtle of Alleres, 385.—Makes peace with the duke of Normandy, 385.—Harangues the Pariſians, 386.—Deſtroys many of the infamous Jacquerie, of Beauvoiſis, 390.—Declares war againſt France, 409. Takes ſeveral towns and fortreſſes in France, 411.—Makes peace with the duke of Normandy, 446.—Declares war againſt him, III. 17.—Makes war on France, 109.—Makes peace with the king of France, 209.—Enters into alliance with don Pedro of Caſtille, 240.—Conducts the prince of Wales and don Pedro to Pampeluna, 275.—Enters into an alliance with the king of England, 422.—Makes peace with the king of France, IV. 71, 218.—Applies to king Richard of England for aſſiſtance againſt the king of France, 370.—Enters into an alliance with him in England, 373. Solicits aid from the Engliſh at Bourdeaux to raiſe the ſiege of Pampeluna, V. 30.—Concludes

Concludes a peace with the king of Spain, 48.—His extraordinary death, IX. 90.

Navarre, the young king of, goes to Paris, to endeavour to gain back his inheritance of Evreux, XII. 39.

Navarre, the lord Lewis of, takes the town of La Charité, III. 165.—Marries the queen of Naples, 210.

Navarre, Philip of, defends the poſſeſſions of his brother in Normandy againſt the king of France, II. 291—Raiſes an army to raiſe the ſiege of St. Valery, 432.—Refuſes to accept the peace which had been concluded between his brother and the duke of Normandy, 446.

Necromancer, a, offers to deliver up the caſtel del Ovo to the duke of Anjou by enchantment, VI. 41.—Beheaded by order of the earl of Savoy, 44.

Negociations, carried on at Bilinges reſpecting a peace between the Engliſh and the French, VI. 335.

Nesle, Guy de, defeated and taken priſoner by the Engliſh in Saintonge, II. 269.—Slain, 272.

Nesle, lord William de, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

Nevele, the church of, burnt by the earl of Flanders, with ſeveral hundreds of the men of Ghent in it, V. 303.

Nevil's Cross, the battle of, II. 189.

under king Edward the Third, II. 257.—Off the iſland of Bas in Brittany, between the Engliſh and Flemings, IV. 141.—Before La Rochelle, between the earl of Pembroke and the Spaniards, IV. 156.

Navarete, the battle of, between the prince of Wales and don Henry of Caſtille, III. 305.

Navarre, Charles, king of, lands with a large army at Cherbourg, II. 281.—Arreſted by the king of France, 289.—Eſcapes from the caſtle of Alleres, 385.—Makes peace with the duke of Normandy, 385.—Harangues the Pariſians, 386.—Deſtroys many of the infamous Jacquerie, of Beauvoiſis, 390.—Declares war againſt France, 409. Takes ſeveral towns and fortreſſes in France, 411.—Makes peace with the duke of Normandy, 446.—Declares war againſt him, III. 17.—Makes war on France, 109.—Makes peace with the king of France, 209.—Enters into alliance with don Pedro of Caſtille, 240.—Conducts the prince of Wales and don Pedro to Pampeluna, 275.—Enters into an alliance with the king of England, 422.—Makes peace with the king of France, IV. 71, 218.—Applies to king Richard of England for aſſiſtance againſt the king of France, 370.—Enters into an alliance with him in England, 373. Solicits aid from the Engliſh at Bourdeaux to raiſe the ſiege of Pampeluna, V. 30.—Concludes

Concludes a peace with the king of Spain, 48.—His extraordinary death, IX. 90.

Navarre, the young king of, goes to Paris, to endeavour to gain back his inheritance of Evreux, XII. 39.

Navarre, the lord Lewis of, takes the town of La Charité, III. 165.—Marries the queen of Naples, 210.

Navarre, Philip of, defends the poſſeſſions of his brother in Normandy againſt the king of France, II. 291—Raiſes an army to raiſe the ſiege of St. Valery, 432.—Refuſes to accept the peace which had been concluded between his brother and the duke of Normandy, 446.

Necromancer, a, offers to deliver up the caſtel del Ovo to the duke of Anjou by enchantment, VI. 41.—Beheaded by order of the earl of Savoy, 44.

Negociations, carried on at Bilinges reſpecting a peace between the Engliſh and the French, VI. 335.

Nesle, Guy de, defeated and taken priſoner by the Engliſh in Saintonge, II. 269.—Slain, 272.

Nesle, lord William de, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

Nevele, the church of, burnt by the earl of Flanders, with ſeveral hundreds of the men of Ghent in it, V. 303.

Nevil's Cross, the battle of, II. 189.

Neville,

Neville, the lord, raiſes the ſiege of Mortain, V. 17.—Takes St. Manbert, 20.—Diſmiſſed from his command in Northumberland, IX. 238.

Newtoun, ſir John, ſent on an embaſſy to Richard the Second from the rebels of Kent, V. 341.

Nicopoli, the town of, in Turkey, beſieged by the king of Hungary and John of Burgundy, XI. 237.—The ſiege raiſed by the ſultan Bajazet, 297.

Niort, the town of, ſtormed by the Engliſh, IV. 184.—Surrenders to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, 213.

Nogent sur Seine, the town of, ſold to the biſhop of Troyes, II. 456.

Nogent sur Seine, the battle of, II. 451.

Normandy, the duchy of, invaded by Edward the Third, II. 125.

Normandy, the duke of, invades Hainault, I. 188.—Beſieges Thin l'Eveque, 199.—Enters Brittany with the lord Charles of Blois, 271.—Leads a large army to oppoſe the king of England in Brittany, II. 38.—Enters into a truce with him, 42.—Leads an army into Gaſcony to oppoſe the earl of Derby, 107.—Takes the town of Miraumont and others, 107 et ſeq.—Marries Jane, counteſs of Boulogne, 249.—Appointed regent of France during the impriſonment of king John in England, 361.—Beſieges

—Beſieges Paris, 395.—Makes peace with the king of Navarre, 397.—Enters Paris, 405.—Lays ſiege to Milan, 444.—Collects a force to drive the Engliſh out of Champagne, 448.—Refuſes to ratify the peace concluded between king John and the Engliſh, 459.—Declines to accept the challenge of the king of England, III. 35.—Endeavours to make peace with him, 40.—Appointed regent on the departure of king John for England, 119.—Crowned king of France at Rheims, under the title of Charles the Fifth, 160.

Northumberland, the earl of, takes Berwick caſtle, IV. 344.—Enters Scotland with a large army, 345.—Appointed lieutenant of Northumberland, &c. V. 329.—Enters Scotland with a large force, VI. 346.—Baniſhed by Richard the Second, XII. 107.—Recalled by the earl of Derby, 147.

Norwich, the biſhop of, appointed commander in chief of a croiſade againſt the Clementiſts, VI. 262.—Enters Flanders contrary to the advice of ſir Hugh Calverley, 271.—Takes the town of Gravelines and other places, 271 et ſeq.—Beſieges Ypres, 287.—Abandons the ſiege, and returns to England, 301.—Badly received on his return, 332.

Noyon, the biſhop of, taken priſoner at Manconſeil, II. 415.

O.

Oliferne, Agadinquor, an African chief, his conduct at the ſiege of Africa, X. 202.

Orchies, the town of, burnt by the earl of Hainault, I. 218.

Orenze, the town of, in Galicia, ſurrenders to the forces of the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 276.

Oriflamme, the ſacred banner ſo called, diſplayed by the king of France at the battle of Roſebecque in Flanders, VI. 223.

Orleans, the ducheſs of, ſuſpected of attempting to poiſon the king of France, X. 245.—Suſpected of cauſing his illneſs, 330.

Orthon, a familiar ſpirit, ſerves the lord of Coraſſe, VII. 294.

Ortringas, the town of, taken by Peter d'Anchin, VII. 135.

Ostrate, Wauſtre, takes the caſtle of Roulebois ſur Seine, III. 17.

Ostrevant, the country of, burnt by the garriſon of Douay, I. 195.

Ostrevant, the count of, created a knight of the garter, X. 230.—Gives offence to the king of France, 232.—Does homage to the king of France for the county of Oſtrevant, 235.—Raiſes an army to invade Frieſland, XI. 262.—Invades Frieſland, 275.—Diſbands his

his army, 279.—Invites the earl of Derby to Hainault after he had been baniſhed from England, XII. 62.

Otho, ſir, of Brunſwicke demand his pay from pope Clement at Avignon, VII. 349.

Otterbourne, the battle of, IX. 254. [See alſo 266, *note*.]

Oudenarde, the town of, beſieged by the men of Ghent, V. 134. VI. 117.—Taken by Francis Atremen, 319.—Retaken by the lord Deſtournay, VI. 363.

Oxford, the earl of, taken priſoner in Gaſcony, II. 65.—Endeavours to diſſuade the king of England from aſſiſting his uncles in their pretenſions to the crown of Caſtille, VII. 115.—Created duke of Ireland, VIII. 118.

P.

Pampeluna, the town of, beſieged by the king of Caſtille, IV. 382.

Paris, the city of, beſieged by the duke of Normandy, II. 395.

Parisians, the, rebel againſt Charles the Sixth, VI. 14.—Appeaſed by the lord de Coucy, 16.—Fined by the king, 252.

Partenay, the lord de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

Passac, ſir Walter de, takes St. Forget, and ſeveral other places in the Toulouſain, VII. 308.—Accompanies the duke of Bourbon in an expedition into Caſtille, VIII. 155.—Arrives at Burgos, 214.

St. Patrick's Hole, in Ireland, its ſingular properties, XI. 130.

Pavie, ſir Aymery de, governor of Calais, enters into a treaty with ſir Geoffry de Chargny to deliver the town up to him, II. 239.—Prevented by the king of England, 240.—Taken priſoner by ſir Geoffry de Chargny, and beheaded, 263.

Peace, concluded between France and England, III. 43.—At Leulinghen, XI. 105.

Pedro the Fourth, don, king of Caſtille, ſummoned to appear before pope Urban the Fifth at Avignon, III. 214.—Excommunicated, 215.—Endeavours to raiſe a force to oppoſe his brother don Henry, and the duke of Burgundy, 219.—Flies to Corunna, 221.—Goes to Aquitaine to ſolicit the aſſiſtance of the prince of Wales, 228.—Enters Spain, accompanied by the prince and a large force, 283.—Defeats the army of don Henry, 315.—Obtains the ſubmiſſion of Caſtille, 321.—Incurs the diſpleaſure of the prince of Wales, 329.—Defeated by don Henry at Morteil, 354.—Taken priſoner, 357.—Killed by his brother, 359.

Pembroke, the earl of, ſent to the aſſiſtance of the prince of Wales in Aquitaine, III. 403.—Makes war in Perigord, &c. 407.—Invades the territories of Anjou, IV. 10.—Returns to England, 121.—Appointed governor of Aquitaine, 152.—Defeated and taken priſoner by the Spaniards before La Rochelle, 161.—Inſulted by Evan of Wales at St. Andero, 169.—Obtains his ranſom, 253.—Dies at Arras, 255.

Pennon, the nature of the military enſign ſo called, explained, II. 307, *note*.

Percy, ſir Henry, dies in Caſtille, IX. 20.

Percy, ſir Henry, appointed commander in chief of the forces in Northumberland, IX. 238.

Percy, ſir Ralph, captured at the battle of Otterbourne, IX. 259.

Percy, ſir Thomas, appointed ſeneſchal of Poitou, IV. 51.—Takes the caſtle of Montcontour, 133.—Captured by the French at Soubiſe, 188.—Reſigns his office of ſteward of the houſehold to king Richard the Second, XI. 359.—Appointed governor of Aquitaine, XII. 171.

Perigord, the cardinal de, endeavours to make peace between the king of France and the prince of Wales previous to the battle of Poitiers, II. 312.—Makes peace between the duke of Normandy and the king of Navarre, 445.

Perigord, the earl of, defeats the high ſteward of Rouerge, III. 388.—Beſieges Realville, 412.

Perth, the town of, deſtroyed by Richard the Second, VII. 70.

Peterſon, John, admiral of the Flemiſh fleet, defeated and captured by the Engliſh off the iſland of Bas, IV. 142.

St. Phagon, the town of, in Spain, pillaged by ſome Breton ſoldiers, IX. 37.

Philip, lord, of Burgundy, killed before Aiguillon, II. 176.

Philip of Valois, choſen king of France, to the excluſion of Iſabella, queen of England, I. 10, 79.—Makes war on the Flemings, 79.—Baniſhes Robert d'Artois from France, 93.—Puts on the croſs, 107.—Enters into an alliance with the king of Scotland, 132.—Receives a defiance from the king of England, 139.—Leads an army to oppoſe his forces, 153.—Deſtroys the territories of ſir John of Hainault, 167.—Invades Flanders, 181.—Sends forces into Scotland to aſſiſt the Scots againſt the Engliſh, 221.—Aſſembles a large army to raiſe the ſiege of Tournay, 225.—Enters into a truce with the king of England, 249.—Aſſiſts the lord Charles of Blois to recover the duchy of Brittany from the earl of Montfert, 270.—Aſſembles an army to oppoſe the earl of Derby in Gaſcony, II. 106.—Collects

—Collects another army to oppose king Edward in Normandy, 131.—Defeated at the battle of Crecy, 166.—Collects a large army to raise the siege of Calais, 214.—Enters into a truce with the king of England, 232.—Marries the lady Blanche, daughter of Philip, king of Navarre, 249.—Dies at Nogent le Roi, 267.

Philip, son of king John of France, created duke of Burgundy, III. 160.

Philippa, daughter of the earl William of Hainault, married to Edward the Third, I. 70.—In the absence of the king raises an army to oppose the Scots, II. 187.—Defeats them at the battle of Nevil's Cross, 189.—Receives the king of Scotland as her prisoner at York, 199.—Her three last requests to king Edward, IV. 21.—Her death, 22.

Philippa, daughter of the duke of Lancaster, married to the king of Portugal, VIII. 178.

Picardy, the country of, invaded by king Edward the Third, II. 146.

Pierrepont, the town of, taken by sir Eustace d'Ambreticourt, III. 33.

Piquigny, sir John de, delivers the king of Navarre from the castle of Alleres, II. 385.—Endeavours to take the town of Amiens, 418.—Forces the duke of Normandy to raise the siege of Mauconseil, II. 414.—Dies at La Herrielle, 455.

Plague, the, deſolates all Europe, II. 265.

Plaisac, Heliot de, governor of Boutville, taken by the French, V. 56.

Poitiers, the city of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 183.—Surrenders to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 183.

Poitiers, the battle of, between the king of France and the prince of Wales, II. 320.

Poitiers, ſir Charles de, burnt to death at a maſked dance at Paris, XI. 72.

Poix, the town of, deſtroyed by the Engliſh under Edward the Third, II. 147.

St. Pol, the town of, beſieged by the duke of Lancaſter, IV. 33.

St. Pol, the earl of, ſlain at the battle of Crecy, II. 168.

St. Pol, the count de, captured by the Engliſh at Lique, and ſent to England, IV. 261.—Marries the lady Maude, daughter of the princeſs of Wales, V. 71.—Leads an army into Frieſland, XI. 272.

Pommiers, the lord de, beheaded at Bourdeaux for treaſon, IV. 305.

Pompadour, the lord of, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

Pondaire, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

Pons, the lord de, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

Pons, the lord de, turns to the French intereſt, IV. 130.

Pont au Demer, the town of, in Normandy, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 292.

Pont du St. Esprit, the town of, taken by the free companies, III. 86.

Pontevedra, the town of, in Galicia, ſurrenders to the army of the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 81.

Ponthieu, the country of, conquered by the forces under ſir Hugh de Chatillon, III. 397.

Ponthieu, the earl of, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 335.

Populace, of England, rebel againſt king Richard and the nobility, V. 333.—Enter London and do much miſchief, 347.—Diſperſed by the king, 363.

Porcien, the earl of, ranſomed, III. 398.

Porkers of la Respaille, a ſet of pillagers ſo called, commit ſeveral depredations in Flanders, VI. 385.

Port St. Marie, taken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 75.

Portboeuf, Peter, governor of Dinant, taken priſoner, II. 37.

Portelet, don Juan Ferdinando de, informs Froiſſart of many particulars relative to the affairs of Portugal, VII. 362.

Poulet, the caſtle of, in Gaſcony, taken by the Engliſh under ſir Thomas Trivet, V. 38.

Poursuivant d'Amour, the meaning of the title explained, III 401, *note*.

Pressigny, ſir Reginald de, put to death, II. 278.

Preux, the caſtle of, taken by the duke of Burgundy, III. 168.

Prie, the lord of, captured at the battle of Auray, III. 192.

Pruniaux, John, a citizen of Ghent, appointed one of the commanders of the Whitehoods in that city, V. 131.—Takes the town of Oudenarde, 162.—Baniſhed from Flanders, 167.—Delivered up to the earl, and beheaded, 168.

Pulpiron, the caſtle of, taken by the French under ſir Walter de Paſſac, VII. 316.

Punach, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 62.

Q.

Quarrel, between the houſes of Brabant and Gueldres, the cauſe of, explained, IX. 48.

Queens, three, beſieged in the town of Melun ſur Seine, II. 444.

Quimpercorentin, the town of, in Brittany, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.

Quimperlé, the town of, in Brittany, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.—Beſieged by the duke of Brittany, 270.

R.

Raimbaut, Lewis, a captain of the free companies, beheaded, VII. 234.

Ramsay, Alexander, takes the caſtle of Berwick, IV. 336.—Captured in the caſtle by the earl of Northumberland, 344.

Ravenal, lord Raoul de, captured at Mauconſeil, II. 415.

Realville, the town of, taken by ſtorm by the earl of Perigord, III. 426.

Reginald, count of Guelders, his extravagance, IX. 49.—Marries the daughter of Bertald, of Mechlin, 56.—Afterwards marries Iſabella, daughter of Edward the Second of England, 56.

Rennes, the town of, taken by the earl of Montfort, or duke of Brittany, I. 259.—Surrenders to the lord Charles of Blois, 299.—Beſieged by the duke of Lancaſter, 374.—Taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.

Reole, La, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 82.—Surrenders to the duke of Anjou, IV. 257.

Reyneval, lord Raoul de, defeated by the Engliſh and Navarrois, under ſir Godfrey de Harcourt, II. 363.

Rheims,

Rheims, the town of, beſieged by Edward the Third, III. 13.

Ribadeo, count, of Spain, one of the miniſters of Charles the Fourth of France, arreſted by the duke of Burgundy while regent, XI. 43.

Ribeaumont, ſir Euſtace de, captured near Calais, II. 246.—Receives a chaplet of pearls from the king of England, in reward for his proweſs, 247.—Slain at the battle of Poitiers, 332.

Ribemmont, ſir Galahant de, mortally wounded in a ſkirmiſh with the Engliſh, III. 10.

Richard, ſon of the prince of Wales, declared preſumptive heir to the throne of England, III. 200, 279.—Crowned king of England, 282.

Richard the Second, placed under the tuition of ſir Guiſcard d'Angle, III. 283.—Enters into an alliance with the king of Navarre, 373.—Sends an army to the aſſiſtance of the duke of Brittany, V. 150.—Quells the rebellion of the populace under Wat Tyler, &c. 363.—Makes a tour through ſeveral parts of England to puniſh the inſurgents, 372.—Marries the lady Anne of Bohemia, VI. 33—Enters into a truce with France, 337.—Heads an army to oppoſe the Scots and the admiral of France, VII. 57.—Deſtroys the abbey of Melroſe, and ſeveral places in Scotland, 65 et ſeq.—

Quarrels

Quarrels with his uncles of York and Gloceſter, VIII. 226.—Excites the diſcontent of the people of England, 226.—Retires to Wales, 231.—Conſtrained by the people to appoint commiſſioners to examine into accounts of his confidential miniſters, 319.—Retires to Briſtol, 331.—Takes meaſures to counteract the proceedings of the new council, which had been appointed for him by the commiſſioners of accounts, 336.—Sends the duke of Ireland, as his lieutenant, with a large army towards London, 346.—His troops defeated near Oxford, 355.—Returns to London, under the conduct of the archbiſhop of Canterbury, 362.—Aſſembles a parliament to receive the homage of his ſubjects, 364.—Enters into a truce with the king of France, 347.—Holds a grand tournament at London, X. 222.—Endeavours to make peace with France, 250.—Concludes a peace with king Charles, XI. 105.—Preſents the duke of Lancaſter with the duchy of Aquitaine, 119.—Leads an army into Ireland, 124.—Seeks to marry the lady Iſabella, daughter of the king of France, 142.—Obtains the ſubmiſſion of four Iriſh kings, 156.—Recals the duke of Lancaſter from Aquitaine, 168.—Has an interview with the king of France at Ardres, 285.—Receives the lady Iſabella from king Charles in his tent at Ardres,

Ardres, XI. 288.—Marries her at Calais, 289.—Becomes unpopular in England, 351.—Orders the duke of Gloceſter to be arreſted, 364.—Inveſts the earl of Rutland with the conſtableſhip of England, XII. 33.—Proclaims a feaſt to be held at Eltham, 43.—Baniſhes the earl marſhal for life, and the earl of Derby for ſix years, 56.—Seizes the revenues of the duchy of Lancaſter on the death of the duke, 92.—Breaks off a marriage which was in contemplation between the earl of Derby and the daughter of the duke of Berry, 95.—Holds a tournament at Windſor, which is but thinly attended, 104.—Baniſhes the earl of Northumberland and his ſon, 107.—The people of England riſe in rebellion againſt him, and in favour of the earl of Derby, 109.—Retires to Flint [*Conway*] caſtle, 135.—Surrenders to the earl of Derby, 140.—Impriſoned in the Tower of London, 145.—Reſigns the crown in favour of the earl of Derby, 157.—His death, 190.—His funeral, 193.

Ridabavia, the town of, taken by ſtorm by the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 172.

Rigault, Giles, de Rouay, preſented with the red hat in the preſence of king John at Paris, II. 270.

Rivierre, the lord de la, takes the caſtle of Aquigni, III. 167.—Impriſoned by the dukes of Burgundy and Berry during the regency,

regency, XI. 46.—His eſtates confiſcated, 50.—Delivered from priſon, 190.

Robert, duke of Hedelberg, elected emperor of Germany, XII. 196.

Robert, king of Sicily, endeavours to make peace between the kings of France and England, I. 213.

Robert, the hermit, ordered by a viſion to interfere in bringing about a peace between France and England, XI. 176.—Attends the conferences at Leulinghen, 179.—Sent to England, 181.

Robesart, the canon de, defeats the Navarrois near Creil, II. 430.—Turns to the Engliſh intereſt, III. 402.

Roche, La, ſur Yon, the caſtle of, taken by the duke of Cambridge, III. 455.—Surrenders to the French under ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, IV. 227.

Roche, La, d'Errien, the town of, taken by ſir Thomas Daggeworth, II. 210.—Beſieged by the lord Charles of Blois, 211.—Surrenders to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.

Rochechouart, the viſcount de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.—Impriſoned by the prince of Wales, III. 429.—Liberated, 458.—His lands invaded by ſir John Chandos, IV. 8.

Rochelle, the town of, blockaded by the Spaniards and French under Evan of Wales, IV. 185.—Turns to the French intereſt, 195.

Rochemilon, the caſtle of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 77.

Roche-posay, La, the town of, taken by the French under ſir John de Bueil, III. 428.

Rochetaillade, John de, a fanatical cordelier friar, propheſies, III. 33.

Romorantin, the town of, taken by the prince of Wales, II. 298.

Roquemadour, the town of, taken by ſir John Chandos, III. 442.

Rosebecque, the battle of, between the king of France and the men of Ghent, VI. 225.

Rosem, the lord de, captured by the duke of Anjou, IV. 314.

Roucy, the town of, in Picardy, taken by Robin Scott, II. 427.—Retaken by the archbiſhop of Rheims, 459.

Rouelles, the town of, in Galicia, ſurrenders to the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 54.

Rouen, the inhabitants of, rebel againſt Charles the Sixth, VI. 17.

Roulleboise sur Seine, the caſtle of, taken by Wanſtre Oſtrate, III. 17.—Delivered up to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, 162.

Routes, a band of armed men ſo called, make war on Arragon, VIII. 133.—Defeated by Raymond de Bachez, 139.

Roye, the lord of, defeats and captures the lord of Gomigines, III. 21.

Roye, ſir Reginald de, with two other knights, holds a tournament near Calais againſt all comers, X. 89.

Rue, James de la, executed at Paris for treaſon, IV. 291.

S.

Saimpi, the lord de, with two other knights, holds a tournament near Calais, againſt all comers, X. 89.

Saintes, the town of, ſurrenders to the French forces, IV. 190.

Saintonge, the lord de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

Saintre, lord John de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 336.

Salisbury, the earl of, taken priſoner by the garriſon of Liſle, I. 84.—Exchanged for the earl of Moray, 297.—Heads an expedition into Brittany, IV. 219.—Sent on an embaſſy to France, XII. 96.—Unites with the earl of Huntingdon in his plan to murder king Henry, 180.—Beheaded, 186.

Salisbury, the counteſs of, defends Wark Caſtle againſt the Scots, I. 288.—Reſiſts with great ſpirit the diſhonourable overtures of king Edward, 294.

Salisbury, ſir John, beheaded at Oxford, VIII. 359.

Salle, ſir Robert, governor of Norwich, killed by the inſurgents in the reign of Richard the Second, V. 356.

Salvatierra, the town of, ſurrenders to the army of don Pedro and the prince of Wales, III. 283.

St. Salvin, the abbey of, beſieged by the French, IV. 31.

Sancerre, the lord Lewis de, appointed marſhal of France, III. 450.—Defeats the earl of Pembroke at Puirenon, IV. 11.—Viſits the count de Foix at Orthes, IX. 334.—Made conſtable of France, XII. 17.

Santaren, the town of, rebels againſt the king of Caſtille, VII. 247.—Returns to obedience, 250.

Sauvage, Denys's edition of Froiſſart's Chronicles noticed, I. lxxviii.

Sauveterre, the town of, taken by the duke of Anjou, IV. 323.

St. Sauveur le Vicomte, the caſtle of, taken by the French, IV. 273.

Saxony, the duke of, ſent by the emperor of Germany into England to ſee the country previous to the marriage of the lady Anne, of Bohemia, to Richard the Second, V. 188.

Scarcity, a great one in France, II. 270.

Schism, occaſioned in the church by the election of two popes, V. 78.

Scots, the, invade England under Robert Bruce, I. 46.—Their character and manners, 46.—Retake many of their fortreſſes, and penetrate as far as Durham into England, 221.—Retake Edinburgh, 224.—Take Stirling Caſtle, 279.—Enter into a truce with the king of England, 280.—Invade England under king David, 283.—Take the town of Durham, 286.—Beſiege Wark Caſtle, 286.—Defeated by the Engliſh at the battle of Nevil's Croſs, II. 189.—Refuſe to abide by the truce which had been agreed upon at Belinge, VI. 350.—Enter England contrary to the orders of king Robert, 352.—Invade England with the aſſiſtance of ſir John de Vienne, VII. 54.—Treat the admiral with much harſhneſs, 77.—Invade England under the young earl of Douglas, IX. 246.—Defeat the Engliſh at the battle of Otterbourne, 263.

Scott, Robin, takes the town of Roucy, in Picardy, II. 427.

Seaulle, the town of, taken by the French under ſir William de la Tremouille, IX. 97.

Seclin, the town of, burnt by the earl of Hainault, I. 217.

Segar, John, governor of Noyent, murdered at Troyes, II. 457.

Senerach, the lord de, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

Sequainville, ſir Peter de, beheaded at Rouen, III. 161.

St. Severe, in Saintonge, taken by the duke of Berry, IV. 182.

Sleidan, his abridgment of Froiſſart's Chronicles noticed, I. xciii.

Sluys, the town of, taken by the men of Ghent, VI. 106.—Exchanged for the country of Bethune, VII. 39.

Soubise, the caſtle of, taken by the French under Evan of Wales, IV. 189.

Southampton, the town of, pillaged by the French, I. 140.

Sow, the uſe of the military machine ſo called, IV. 311.

Spaniards, the, defeated at ſea by Edward the Third, II. 260.

Spencer, ſir Hugh, the elder, beſieged with Edward the Second in Briſtol, I. 27.—Taken and beheaded, 29.

Spencer, ſir Hugh, the younger, directs the government of Edward the Second, I. 10.—Cauſes the earl of Lancaſter to be beheaded, 11.—Fruſtrates the endeavours of queen Iſabella to obtain aſſiſtance in France, 17.—Beſieged with the king in Briſtol by the queen's forces, 27.—Ignominiouſly beheaded at Hereford, 32.

Spencer, the lord de, his death, IV. 290.

Stafford, lord, captured before Vannes, II. 36.—Exchanged for the lord of Cliſſon, 43.—Created an earl, 253.

Stafford, lord Ralph, killed by ſir John Holland, VII. 61.

Standwich, John, puts Wat Tyler to death in Smithfield, V. 361.

Star, the order of the, revived by king John of France, II. 270.

Stirling Caſtle, taken by the Scots, I. 279.

Straw, Jack, heads the populace of England in the rebellion againſt king Richard and the nobility, V. 336.—Taken and beheaded, 364.

Sudbury, Simon de, archbiſhop of Canterbury and chancellor of England, murdered in the Tower of London by Wat Tyler, V. 351.

Suffolk, the earl of, captured by the governor of Liſle, I. 184.

Surgeres, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 181.—Surrenders to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 198.

T.

Taillebourg, the town of, taken by the Engliſh under the earl of Derby. II. 181.—Surrenders to the French, IV. 190.—Beſieged by the duke of Bourbon, VII. 9.

Tailles, the nature of the tax ſo called, explained, III. 335, *note*.

Talbot, lord, dies at Ruelles in Spain, IX. 20.

Tankerville, the earl of, taken priſoner by the Engliſh under Edward the Third, II. 136.—Captured at the battle of Poitiers, 335.

Tarbe, ſir Aimery de, killed in a naval engagement before la Rochelle, IV. 161.

Taſſegnon, the caſtle of, in Gaſcony, taken by ſir Thomas Trivet, V. 36.

Tax on income, eſtabliſhed in France, II. 286.

Tello, don, brother of Henry, king of Caſtille, defeats a body of Engliſh troops under ſir William Felton, III. 290.

Terrieres, the town of, taken by ſir John Chandos, III. 411.

Tertre, Peter du, executed at Paris for treaſon, IV. 291.

Tetenoir, Geoffry, obtains poſſeſſion of the caſtle of Ventadour, in Auvergne, V. 75.—Mortally wounded, IX. 319.—Makes his will, 320.—His death, 322.

Thilliers, the caſtle of, taken by king John of France, II. 292.

Thin l'Eveque, the town of, beſieged by the duke of Normandy, I. 199.

Thouars, the town of, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 205.

Thurie, the town and caſtle of, taken by le Baſtot de Mauleon, VII. 227.

Tibald, doctor Simon, biſhop of London, preaches the juſtice of the war againſt France, III. 415.

Tilt, at Entença, between ſir John Holland and ſir Reginald de Roye, VIII. 202.

Tonnieres, the town of, taken by Edward the Third, III. 27.

Tonniens, the town of, taken by the duke of Normandy, II. 114.—Surrenders to the duke of Anjou, IV. 75.

Tour, the lord de la, ſlain at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

Touraine, the duke of, brother of Charles the Sixth of France, buys the reverſion of the county of Blois, X. 340.—Created duke of Orleans, XI. 6.

Tournament, held at Mons, I. 249.—Given by king Edward the Third at London, out of affection for the counteſs of Saliſbury, II. 18.—Held at Vannes before the duke of Brittany and the earl of Buckingham, V. 263.—At Cambray, in honour of the mar-

riage of the children of Burgundy with thoſe of Hainault, VI. 378.—At Paris, in honour of queen Iſabella's public entrance, IX. 368.—At Inglevere, near Calais, by three French knights againſt all comers, X. 89.—Held at London, by order of Richard the Second, X. 222.—At Windſor, which is badly attended, XII. 104.—Held at Oxford by the earl of Huntingdon, &c. 180.

Tournay, the town of, beſieged by Edward the Third, I. 216.

Treaty of alliance, entered into at Vilvorde, between the countries of Flanders, Brabant, and Hainault, I. 214.

Treaty of peace, copy of the, between the duke of Burgundy and the men of Ghent, VII. 97.

Trelawny, ſir Matthew, ſeverely wounded at Rocheperion, II. 4.—Taken priſoner, 5.—Reſcued from death, 13.

Tremouille, ſir William de la, appointed to command a body of men to aſſiſt the ducheſs of Brabant againſt the duke of Gueldres, IX. 95.

Treſſilian, ſir Robert, beheaded by order of the duke of Gloceſter and his party, VIII. 342.

Trivet, ſir Thomas, ſent to the aſſiſtance of the king of Navarre, V. 34.—Takes ſeveral forts in Gaſcony, 35 et ſeq.—Marches into Caſtille,

Caſtille, 41.—Returns to England, 56.—Defeated by the French at Arras, V. 192. Committed to the Tower of London, VI. 333.—Killed by a fall from his horſe, VIII. 323.

Truce, between the Engliſh and the Scots, I. 71.—Between the French and Engliſh, 247.—Between the Engliſh and the Scots, 280, 297.—Between the lord Charles of Blois and the counteſs of Montfort, II. 16.—For three years, between the French and Engliſh, 42.—Between France and England, 232.—Prolonged by order of pope Innocent, 280.—Between France and England, 370.—Between the Engliſh and the Scots, IV. 81.—Between the French and Engliſh, 271, 277.—Between the Engliſh and Scots, 366.—Between the French and Engliſh with all their allies, VI. 337.—Between the kings of Caſtille and Portugal, VII. 291.—Between the French and Engliſh, IX. 347. XI. 67, 105. XII. 195.

Tyler, Wat, heads the populace of England in their rebellion againſt king Richard the Second and the nobility, V. 336.—Killed in Smithfield, 361.

U.

Urban the Fifth, pope, elected at Avignon, III. 97.—Preaches a croiſade againſt the Saracens, 104.—Excommunicates don Pedro, king of Caſtille, 215.—His death, IV. 115.

Urban the Sixth, elected at Rome, IV. 363.—Sends a bull to England for the deſtruction of the Clementiſts, VI. 262.—Beſieged in Perugia, VII. 350.—Eſcapes to Rome, 351.—Dies at Rome, X. 64.

Utrecht, the town of, taken by the earl of Hainault, II. 103.

Uzes, the caſtle of, in Auvergne, taken by ſir John Devereux, IV. 135.—Surrenders to ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, 137.

V.

Valery, the caſtle of, taken by the king of Navarre, II. 411.—Taken by the earl de St. Pol, 432.—Taken by ſir Hugh de Chatillon, III. 397.

Valois, the lady Joan de, concludes a truce between the kings of France and England, I. 246.

Vannes, the town of, ſurrenders to the earl of Montfort as duke of Brittany, I. 262.—Taken by ſtorm by the lord Charles of Blois, 315.—Retaken by lord Robert d'Artois, II. 28.—Taken by ſir Oliver de Cliſſon, 30.—Beſieged by the Engliſh, 32.—Taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 222.

Varennes, John de, reſigns all his preferments in the church, XI. 116.

Vauclingen, the town of, taken by the duke of Burgundy, IV. 288.

Vaudemont, earl of, captured at the battle of Poitiers, II. 332.

Vauflart de la Croix, ſir, defeated in a ſkirmiſh at Pont a Treſſin, I. 230.—Put to death at Liſle, 231.

Vaulx, ſir Henry de, taken priſoner at Cormicy, III. 26.

Ventadour, the caſtle of, in Auvergne, betrayed to Geoffrey Tete-noir, V. 75.—Beſieged by the duke of Berry, IX. 93.—Taken by his forces, X. 79.

Verchin, ſir Gerard de, mortally wounded in a tournament at Mons, I. 249.

Verneuil, the town of, taken by the duke of Lancaſter, II. 292.

Verteuil, the town of, taken by the duke of Bourbon, VII. 51.

Vienne, ſir John de, governor of Calais, ſent priſoner to England, II. 232.

Vienne, ſir John de, admiral of France, heads an expedition to Scotland to invade England, VI. 383.—Badly treated by the Scots, VII. 15.—Invades England, accompanied by a Scottiſh army, 54.—Returns to France, 80. —Sent on an embaſſy into Caſtille, IX. 312. —Killed at the battle of Nicopoli, XI. 299.

Vienne, the dauphin of, inveſted with the duchy of Normandy, II. 285.

Vietat, don Alphonſo, high admiral of Portugal, ſent to England to convey the duke of Lancaſter and his army to Portugal, VIII. 3.

Villaines, Le begue de, one of the miniſters of Charles the Sixth, arreſted by the duke of Burgundy during his regency, XI. 43.—Liberated, 49.

Villeclope, the town of, in Galicia, taken by the duke of Lancaſter, VIII. 59.

Vilelfranche, the town of, taken by the earl of Derby, II. 91.—Taken by ſtorm by the duke of Normandy, 107.—Taken by ſir John Chandos, III. 442.

Visconti, ſir Bernabo de, put to death by his nephew, VII. 5.

Visconti, ſir Galeas de, puts ſir Bernabo, his uncle, to death, VII. 5.—Enters into an alliance with the ſultan Bajazet, XI. 247.

W.

Wake, ſir Thomas, defeated by the Gaſcon lords, III. 388.

Walworth, ſir William, lord mayor of London, aſſiſts to ſecure Wat Tyler in Smithfield, V. 361.

Wark caſtle, belonging to the earl of Saliſbury, beſieged by the Scots, I. 286.

Wars, the, between France and England, how cauſed, I. 9.

Warwick, the earl of, joins the duke of Gloceſter in his attempts to excite diſturbances in England, XI. 349.—Sent to the Tower, XII. 25.—Baniſhed to the Iſle of Wight, 30.—Recalled by the earl of Derby, 147.

Wersey, lord Robert de, taken priſoner at the battle of Nevil's Croſs, II. 196.

Whitehoods, the cuſtom of wearing them revived at Ghent, V. 104.

Whitehoods, the, ſee "Ghent, men of."

Winceslaus the Sixth, emperor of Germany, his election, V. 149.—Sends his ſiſter, Anne of Bohemia, to England, to be married to Richard the Second, VI. 30.—Dies at Luxembourg, 335.

Wiſant, James and Peter, their patriotic conduct during the ſiege of Calais, II. 225.

Wykeham, ſir William, appointed biſhop of Worceſter and chancellor of England, III. 385.

Y.

York, the archbiſhop of, diſmiſſed from his office of treaſurer by the commiſſioners of accounts, VIII. 329.

York, the duke of, his creation, VIII. 118.—Confederates with the duke of Gloceſter and others againſt king Richard and his council, 307.

Ypres, the town of, enters into an alliance with the men of Ghent, V. 133.—Turns to the earl of Flanders, 291.—Surrenders to the king of France, VI. 199.—Beſieged by the biſhop of Norwich, 287.

Yrier, the town of, in Limoges, taken by ſir Bertrand du Gueſclin, IV. 102.

FINIS.

NEW WORKS,

PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND ORME, PATERNOSTER-ROW.

MEMOIRS OF JOHN LORD DE JOINVILLE, Grand Seneschal of Champagne, WRITTEN BY HIMSELF, containing a HISTORY OF PART OF THE LIFE of LOUIS IX. King of France, surnamed St. Louis, including an Account of that King's Expedition to Egypt in the year 1248.

To which are added, the NOTES AND DISSERTATIONS of M. du Cange on the above, together with the Dissertations of M. Le Baron de la Battie on the Life of St. Louis, M. L'Evesque de la Ravaliere and M. Falconet, on the Assassins of Syria: from the "Memoires de l'Académie de Belles Lettres et Inscriptions de France." Translated by THOMAS JOHNES, Esq. M. P. Handsomely printed in Two Volumes, Quarto, and illustrated with Engravings. Price *4l.* 4*s.* boards.

THE TRAVELS OF BERTRANDON DE LA BROCQUIERE, Counsellor and First Esquire Carver to Philippe Le Bon Duke of Burgundy, to Palestine, and his Return from Jerusalem overland to France during the Years 1432 and 1433, extracted and put into modern French from a Manuscript in the National Library at Paris. Translated by THOMAS JOHNES, Esq. M. P. In one volume, 8vo. illustrated with a Map of Tartary, price 12*s.* in boards.

MEMOIRS OF THE LIFE OF COLONEL HUTCHINSON, Governor of Nottingham Castle and Town, Representative of the County of Nottingham in the Long Parliament, and of the Town of Nottingham in the first Parliament of Charles II. &c. With original Anecdotes of many of the most distinguished of his Contemporaries, and a Summary Review of Public Affairs, written by his Widow, Lucy, daughter of Sir Allen Aspley, Lieutenant of the Tower, &c. Now first published from the original manuscript. By the Rev. JULIUS HUTCHINSON. To which is prefixed the Life of Mrs. Hutchinson, written by herself, a Fragment. Embellished with two elegantly engraved Portraits, and a view of Nottingham Castle. In one vol. 4to. The second edition. Price 1*l.* 11*s.* 6*d.*; and royal, price 2*l.* 12*s.* 6*d.* in boards.

"These interesting papers will gratify all who delight in the contemplation of human character, and are sensible to the charms of intellectual and moral excellence." *Ed. Rev.* "As a political record we regard this work as a valuable addition to our stock of original documents; but perhaps its greatest merit will be allowed to rest on its excellency as a literary composition. The story is interesting in the highest degree. The editor has not exaggerated when he recommends his book to the

the Ladies as more entertaining than most novels. The style is undoubtedly entitled to the praise of vigour and elegance, and will not be easily matched among the writings of our elder authors." *Crit. Rev.* "This work is indeed a most valuable addition to the historical records of a period which has always been considered as one of the most important in the annals of English history." *Ox. Rev.* "This is a book of singular interest and importance." *Cens. Lit.*

NAVAL AND MILITARY MEMOIRS OF GREAT BRITAIN, from 1727 to 1783. By ROBERT BEATSON, Esq. LL.D. The second edition, with a Continuation, 6 vols, 8vo. 3*l.* 3*s.* boards.

"We cannot but remark, that the mind is lost in wonder while contemplating the mass of heroic deeds, and the number of brilliant exploits, which are collected together within the compass of these volumes. The author has executed a laborious task, and has established a claim to the acknowledgements of his country. He has manifested remarkable diligence in the collection of materials, yet we do not believe that the writer's partiality has induced him in a single instance to suppress any fact within the fair scope of his memoirs, or wilfully to misrepresent any one which he has undertaken to relate." *M. Rev.*

A POLITICAL INDEX TO THE HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND; or a Complete Register of the Hereditary Honours, Public Offices, and Persons in Office, from the earliest Periods to the present Time. By ROBERT BEATSON, LL.D. The third edition, corrected and much enlarged, in 3 vols. 8vo. Price 1*l.* 11*s.* 6*d.* in boards.

"The public are certainly obliged to the author for the compilement and publication of so useful a work: a work produced at the expence of much time and great labour, and executed with strict fidelity." *M. Rev.*

A CHRONOLOGICAL REGISTER OF BOTH HOUSES OF THE BRITISH PARLIAMENT, from the Union in 1708, to the fourth Parliament of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, in 1807. By ROBERT BEATSON, LL.D. In 3 vols. 8vo. Price 1*l.* 11*s.* 6*d.* in boards.

LONDINIUM REDIVIVUM, or an ancient History and modern Description of London, compiled from parochial records, archives of various foundations, the Harleian MSS. and other authentic sources. By JAMES PELLER MALCOLM, F.S.A. In quarto. Price 2*l.* 2*s.* in boards, the fourth volume.

"This may indeed be considered as an original History of London. No subject at all connected with the undertaking seems to have escaped the author's notice. The work is full of

of biographical notices, curious anecdotes, local peculiarities, charters, presentments, &c. &c.; and what is not less deserving praise, the extracts from registers are so various, that certificates may be obtained if necessary of upwards of a thousand eminent names, exclusive of inscriptions on monuments. The labour of such an undertaking is so manifest, and its utility at the same time so obvious, that it seems a sort of public duty to promote it by all possible accommodation. We have no doubt that when finished this will be the most comprehensive account of London that has ever been published." *Brit. Crit.*

*** The purchasers of the former volumes are requested to complete their sets.——The three first volumes may be had either separately or together, price 5*l.* 5*s.* in boards.

ANECDOTES OF THE MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF LONDON during the 18th Century, including the Charities, Depravities, Dresses, and Amusements of the Citizens of London, during that Period; with a Review of the State of Society in 1807. To which is added, a Sketch of the Domestic and Ecclesiastical Architecture of the various Improvements in the Metropolis. Illustrated by Fifty Engravings. By JAMES PELLER MALCOLM, F. S. A. author of Londinium Redivivum. In 1 vol. 4to. Price 2*l.* 2*s.*

THE HISTORY OF THE ORKNEY ISLANDS. By the Rev. GEORGE BARRY, D. D. minister of Shapenshay. The second edition, with considerable Additions and Notes, by the Rev. Mr. Headrick. In one vol. 4to. illustrated with an accurate and extensive map of the whole island, and eleven plates of the most interesting objects they contain. Price 1*l.* 11*s.* 6*d.* in boards.

LETTERS ON THE STUDY AND USE OF ANCIENT AND MODERN HISTORY, containing Observations and Reflections on the Causes and Consequences of those Events which have produced any conspicuous Change in the Aspect of the World, and the general State of Human Affairs. By JOHN BIGLAND. The Third Edition. In one vol. demy 8vo. embellished with an elegantly engraved head of the Author. Price 10*s.* 6*d.* or one volume 12mo, price 6*s.* in boards.

"Mr. Bigland displays in this volume a well cultivated and comprehensive mind. His style is generally correct; his information is extensive; and the many pertinent remarks and inferences with which he has enriched this summary of general history, meet our cordial approbation." *M. Rev.*

LETTERS ON THE MODERN HISTORY AND POLITICAL ASPECT OF EUROPE, exhibiting the Nature, Causes, and probable Consequences of the grand Contest between Great Britain and France, and the political Circumstances of the different Nations which compose the European System,

System, illustrated with Historical and Geographical Observations. By JOHN BIGLAND. The second edition, revised, and adapted to the present state of Europe, in one volume, 8vo, price 6*s* in boards.

"These Letters discuss, in turn, almost all the great questions which can be agitated by politicians of the present hour. The principles of the author are every where sound and patriotic, and his knowledge is surprisingly extensive" *Brit. Crit.*

VIEW OF THE RUSSIAN EMPIRE during the Reign of Catharine II. and to the Close of the Eighteenth Century, &c. &c. &c. Containing an accurate Description of the Government, Manners, Customs, Religion, Extent, Boundaries, Soil, Climate Produce, Revenue, Trade, Manufactures, &c. &c. of the several Nations that compose that extensive Empire. By WILLIAM TOOKE, F. R. S. in three large volumes, 8vo. Price 1*l.* 11*s.* 6*d.* in boards

"Of Mr. Tooke's abilities to produce judicious compilations and selections, and of the great facility he possesses in presenting to the public books calculated for amusement and instruction, they tell us they have had frequent and satisfactory experience. The Life of Catharine II. and the View of the Russian Empire exhibit adequate portions of good sense, diligence, and taste; and have accordingly been received with very extensive circulation. They contain an ample variety of anecdote, which the author seems peculiarly qualified to detail; a great deal of local information, which his long residence in Russia enabled him to acquire; and an easy and agreeable narrative, the result of much experience in writing. By means of the labours of this indefatigable author, we are now in possession of every species of knowledge and information relative to a vast empire." *See the several Reviews for* 1801, 1802.

THE LIFE OF CATHARINE II. EMPRESS OF RUSSIA. By WILLIAM TOOKE, F. R. S. The fourth edition, with considerable Improvements, in three volumes, 8vo. Price 1*l.* 7*s.* in boards, embellished with engravings.

THE PICTURE OF PETERSBURGH; from the German of HENRY STORCH. In one large volume, 8vo, embellished with plates, and a new Plan of Petersburgh. Price 14*s.* in boards.

THE HISTORY OF EGYPT: from the earliest Accounts of that Country till the Expulsion of the French from Alexandria in the Year 1801. By JAMES WILSON, D. D. in three volumes, 8vo. Price, 1*l.* 4*s.* in boards.

T. DAVISON, Printer,
Whitefriars.

BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY
3 1197 21670 0259